FRIENDS
OF ACPL

AN ELEMENTARY HISTORY OF OUR COUNTRY

COUNTY DEPARTMENT
PUBLIC LIBRARY
FORT WAYNE & ALLEN CO., IND.

J973 cop.2
Tappan
Elementary history
of our country
C3164

THE PUBLIC LIBRARY
of
Fort Wayne and Allen County, Ind.
Information For Country Borrowers

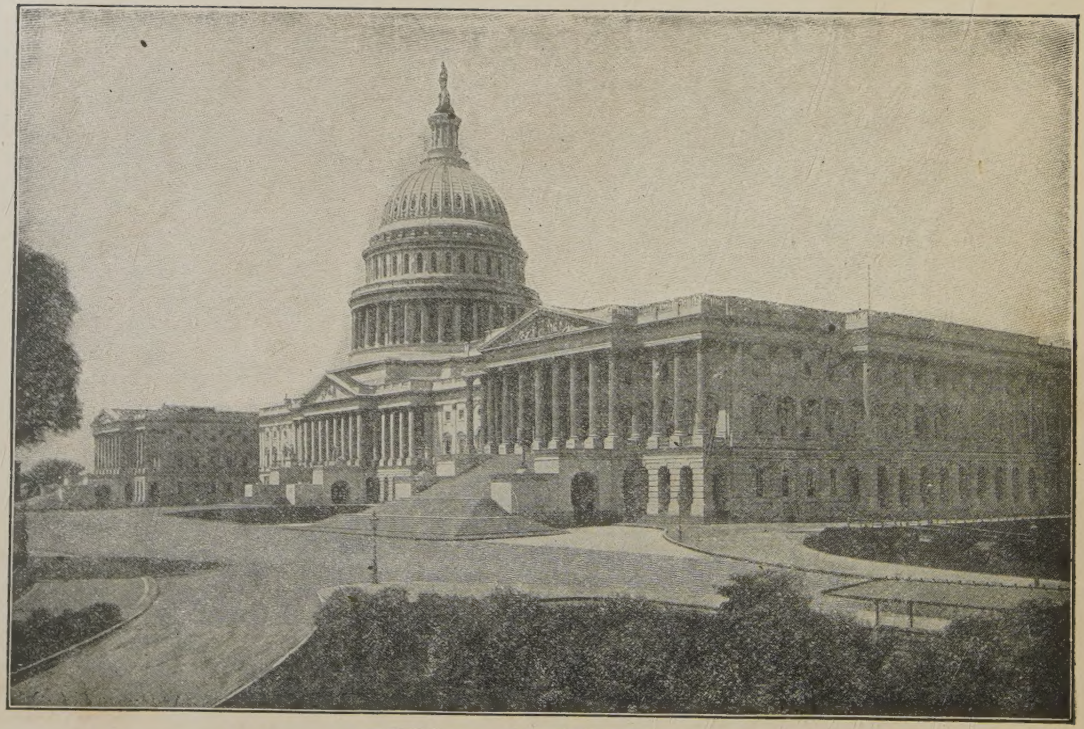
Books are free to all residents of Allen County. They may be borrowed from the Main Library at Fort Wayne or from any Branch, Reading Room, Deposit Station or School Library in Allen County.

Books will be sent by parcel post, prepaid to any borrower living a distance from a Library Station.

COUNTY DEPARTMENT
ANTHONY 3333

LIBRARY BUREAU CAT. NO. 1165

STO



THE CAPITOL AT WASHINGTON

THE TAPPAN-KENDALL HISTORIES

AN ELEMENTARY HISTORY OF OUR COUNTRY

CO. SCHOOLS

BY

EVA MARCH TAPPAN, Ph.D.

Author of "England's Story," "American Hero Stories," "Old World Hero Stories," "Story of the Greek People," "Story of the Roman People," "Our European Ancestors," etc.

j 973

HOUGHTON MIFFLIN COMPANY
BOSTON NEW YORK CHICAGO
The Riverside Press Cambridge

THE TAPPAN–KENDALL SERIES
OF ELEMENTARY HISTORIES

BY EVA MARCH TAPPAN, PH.D.
AND CALVIN NOYES KENDALL, LL.D.

AMERICAN HERO STORIES, Grades IV–V
by Eva March Tappan.

ELEMENTARY HISTORY OF OUR COUNTRY
Grades V–VI
by Eva March Tappan.

OUR EUROPEAN ANCESTORS, Grades VI–VII
by Eva March Tappan.

HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES
Grades VII–VIII
by Reuben Gold Thwaites
and Calvin Noyes Kendall.

COPYRIGHT, 1902, 1914, BY EVA MARCH TAPPAN

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

Twenty-Seventh Impression October, 1920

The Riverside Press
CAMBRIDGE . MASSACHUSETTS
U . S . A

PREFACE

This book aims not at telling stories about the United States, but at giving a short, simple, connected account of our country from its discovery to the present day. Mindful of the pleasure that children take in knowing "why," and of their unfailing interest in biography, I have tried, as far as the limits of the book would permit, to note reasons as well as deeds; and, while avoiding everything of the nature of a biographical sketch, I have sought to arouse and encourage a feeling of friendly familiarity with the heroes of our nation.

Though an introductory history must necessarily be limited in size, it is believed that there can be gained from this volume a definite knowledge of the main events in the history of our land, some idea of the causes of those events, and an acquaintance, sympathetic though slight, with the men who stood behind the events; and that the book will thus serve as an introduction to a later and more extended study of the growth and development of our country.

Acknowledgment is due to General James Grant Wilson, the Lenox Library, Messrs. S. P. Avery, Jr., Walter Bailey Ellis, George A. Clough, Grover Flint, Charles Scribner's Sons, and The Century Company, for permission to reproduce a number of illustrations in this book.

EVA MARCH TAPPAN.

Worcester, Massachusetts,
April, 1902.

The cover designs represent: on the front cover, Columbus's flagship bearing on its sail the initials (F & Y) of Ferdinand and Isabella (Ysabel); on the back cover, Dewey's flagship, the Olympia; and on the shelf edge of the book, the Indian corn-plant.

3164

CONTENTS

IMPORTANT DATES IN AMERICAN HISTORY vii
PRESIDENTS OF THE UNITED STATES ix
DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE x

I. COLUMBUS SHOWS THE WAY TO AMERICA . . . 1
II. THE EARLY FOLLOWERS OF COLUMBUS 13
III. THE EARLY ATTEMPTS TO MAKE SETTLEMENTS . . 24
IV. THE INDIANS AND THEIR WAYS 34
V. VIRGINIA, THE FIRST PERMANENT ENGLISH COLONY . 42
VI. PLYMOUTH, THE FIRST COLONY IN NEW ENGLAND . . 52
VII. THE MASSACHUSETTS BAY COLONY 61
VIII. MAINE, NEW HAMPSHIRE, RHODE ISLAND, AND CONNECTICUT 70
IX. EARLY CUSTOMS OF NEW ENGLAND 83
X. NEW YORK, DELAWARE, AND NEW JERSEY 88
XI. PENNSYLVANIA AND MARYLAND 99
XII. THE CAROLINAS AND GEORGIA 109
XIII. THE FRENCH EXPLORATIONS IN AMERICA 114
XIV. THE STRUGGLE WITH THE FRENCH 119
XV. THE TIMES BEFORE THE REVOLUTION 129
XVI. THE FIRST TWO YEARS OF THE REVOLUTION . . 141
XVII. THE LATTER PART OF THE REVOLUTION 154
XVIII. THE YEARS OF WEAKNESS 168
XIX. THE WESTWARD GROWTH OF THE COUNTRY . . . 183
XX. TROUBLE ARISES OVER SLAVERY 197
XXI. THE CIVIL WAR 208
XXII. THE LATTER YEARS OF THE CENTURY 229
XXIII. THE UNITED STATES AS A WORLD POWER . . . 241
XXIV. OUR COUNTRY TO-DAY 251

INDEX AND PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY

IMPORTANT DATES IN AMERICAN HISTORY

1492 Columbus discovers America.
1497 First voyage of Cabot to America.
1497 Vespucius sails to America.
1513 Ponce de Leon visits Florida.
1522 Magellan's ships sail around the world.
1534 Cartier explores the St. Lawrence.
1542 De Soto discovers the Mississippi.
1565 First town in the United States founded at St. Augustine.
1607 Virginia, the first English colony in America, settled at Jamestown.
1608 Champlain founds Quebec.
1609 Hudson explores the Hudson River.
1614 New York first settled on Manhattan Island.
1617 New Jersey first settled at Bergen.
1619 First legislative assembly in America.
1619 Negro slavery introduced into America.
1620 Massachusetts first settled at Plymouth.
1623 New Hampshire first settled at Dover.
1625 Maine first settled at Pemaquid Point.
1630 Boston founded.
1634 Maryland first settled at St. Mary's.
1636 Rhode Island first settled at Providence.
1636 Connecticut first settled at Hartford.
1638 Pequot War.
1638 Delaware first settled at Wilmington.
1663 North Carolina first settled near Albemarle Sound.
1670 South Carolina first settled near Charleston.
1673 Marquette and Joliet explore the Mississippi.

IMPORTANT DATES IN AMERICAN HISTORY

1675 King Philip's War.
1682 La Salle explores the Mississippi.
1682 Pennsylvania first settled at Philadelphia.
1690 Witchcraft excitement in Massachusetts.
1733 Georgia first settled at Savannah.
1745 Capture of Louisburg.
1759 Capture of Quebec and end of French power in America.
1765 The Stamp Act.
1773 The Boston Tea-party.
1774 First Continental Congress.
1775 April 19. Battle of Lexington and beginning of the Revolution.
1775 June 17. Battle of Bunker Hill.
1776 July 4. Declaration of Independence.
1778 Clark saves the Northwest.
1781 Surrender of Cornwallis and close of the Revolution.
1787 Framing of the Constitution.
1789 Washington becomes first president.
1793 Invention of the cotton-gin.
1803 The Louisiana Purchase.
1804 Suppression of the Barbary pirates.
1812–1815 War with England.
1820 Missouri Compromise.
1825 Opening of the Erie Canal.
1844 Invention of the telegraph.
1846 War with Mexico.
1846 Settlement of the Oregon boundary.
1848 Mexican cession.
1848 Discovery of gold in California.
1850 Compromise of 1850.
1861 Capture of Fort Sumter and beginning of Civil War.
1862 Battle between Monitor and Merrimac.
1863 Emancipation Proclamation.
1863 Battle of Gettysburg.
1865 Surrender of Lee and close of Civil War.
1866 The Atlantic cable laid.

IMPORTANT DATES IN AMERICAN HISTORY

1867 Purchase of Alaska.
1869 Completion of the Union Pacific Railroad.
1876 Centennial Exposition.
1893 Columbian Exposition.
1898 War with Spain.
1898 Annexation of the Hawaiian Islands.
1899 Annexation of Porto Rico, Guam, and the Philippines.
1912 Arbitration treaties with Great Britain and France.
1914 Panama Canal opened to commerce.

PRESIDENTS OF THE UNITED STATES

George Washington	1789–1797	Franklin Pierce	1853–1857
John Adams	1797–1801	James Buchanan	1857–1861
Thomas Jefferson	1801–1809	Abraham Lincoln	1861–1865
James Madison	1809–1817	Andrew Johnson	1865–1869
James Monroe	1817–1825	Ulysses S. Grant	1869–1877
John Quincy Adams	1825–1829	Rutherford B. Hayes	1877–1881
Andrew Jackson	1829–1837	James A. Garfield	1881
Martin Van Buren	1837–1841	Chester A. Arthur	1881–1885
William Henry Harrison	1841	Grover Cleveland	1885–1889
John Tyler	1841–1845	Benjamin Harrison	1889–1893
James K. Polk	1845–1849	Grover Cleveland	1893–1897
Zachary Taylor	1849–1850	William McKinley	1897–1901
Millard Fillmore	1850–1853	Theodore Roosevelt	1901–1909
		William H. Taft	1909–1913
		Woodrow Wilson	1913-

July 4, 1776

A DECLARATION

By the REPRESENTATIVES of the

UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

In GENERAL CONGRESS Assembled

WHEN, in the course of human events, it becomes necessary for one people to dissolve the political bands which have connected them with another, and to assume, among the powers of the earth, the separate and equal station to which the laws of nature and of nature's God entitle them, a decent respect to the opinions of mankind requires that they should declare the causes which impel them to the separation.

We hold these truths to be self-evident, that all men are created equal; that they are endowed by their Creator with certain unalienable rights; that among these, are life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness. That, to secure these rights, governments are instituted among men, deriving their just powers from the consent of the governed; that, whenever any form of government becomes destructive of these ends, it is the right of the people to alter or to abolish it, and to institute a new government, laying its foundation on such principles, and organizing its powers in such form, as to them shall seem most likely to effect their safety and happiness. Prudence, indeed, will dictate that governments long established, should not be changed for light and transient causes; and, accordingly, all experience hath shown, that mankind are more disposed to suffer, while evils are sufferable, than to right themselves by abolishing the forms to which they are accustomed. But, when a long train of abuses and usurpations, pursuing invariably the same object, evinces a design to reduce them under absolute despotism, it is their right, it is their duty, to throw off such government, and to provide new guards for their future security. Such has been the patient sufferance of these colonies, and such is now the necessity which constrains them to alter their former systems of government. The history of the present King of Great Britain is a history of repeated injuries and usurpations, all having, in direct object, the establishment of an absolute tyranny over these States. To prove this, let facts be submitted to a candid world:—

He has refused his assent to laws the most wholesome and necessary for the public good.

He has forbidden his governors to pass laws of immediate and pressing importance, unless suspended in their operation till his assent should be obtained; and, when so suspended, he has utterly neglected to attend to them.

He has refused to pass other laws for the accommodation of large districts of people, unless those people would relinquish the right of representation in the legislature: a right inestimable to them, and formidable to tyrants only.

He has called together legislative bodies at places unusual, uncomfortable, and distant from the depository of their public records, for the sole purpose of fatiguing them into compliance with his measures.

He has dissolved representative houses repeatedly, for opposing, with manly firmness, his invasions on the rights of the people.

He has refused, for a long time after such dissolutions, to cause others to be elected; whereby the legislative powers, incapable of annihilation, have returned to the people at large for their exercise; the state remaining, in the meantime, exposed to all the danger of invasion from without, and convulsions within.

He has endeavored to prevent the population of these States; for that purpose, obstructing the laws for naturalization of foreigners, refusing to pass others to encourage their migration hither, and raising the conditions of new appropriations of lands.

He has obstructed the administration of justice, by refusing his assent to laws for establishing judiciary powers.

He has made judges dependent on his will alone, for the tenure of their offices, and the amount and payment of their salaries.

He has erected a multitude of new offices, and sent hither swarms of officers to harass our people, and eat out their substance.

He has kept among us, in time of peace, standing armies, without the consent of our legislatures.

He has affected to render the military independent of, and superior to, the civil power.

He has combined, with others, to subject us to a jurisdiction foreign to our Constitution, and unacknowledged by our laws; giving his assent to their acts of pretended legislation:

For quartering large bodies of armed troops among us:

For protecting them by a mock trial, from punishment, for any murders which they should commit on the inhabitants of these States:

For cutting off our trade with all parts of the world:

For imposing taxes on us without our consent:

For depriving us, in many cases, of the benefit of trial by jury:

For transporting us beyond seas to be tried for pretended offences:

For abolishing the free system of English laws in a neighboring province, establishing therein an arbitrary government, and enlarging its boundaries, so as to render it at once an example and fit instrument for introducing the same absolute rule into these colonies:

For taking away our charters, abolishing our most valuable laws, and altering, fundamentally, the powers of our governments:

For suspending our own legislatures, and declaring themselves invested with power to legislate for us in all cases whatsoever.

He has abdicated government here, by declaring us out of his protection, and waging war against us.

He has plundered our seas, ravaged our coasts, burnt our towns, and destroyed the lives of our people.

He is, at this time, transporting large armies of foreign mercenaries to complete the works of death, desolation, and tyranny, already begun, with circumstances of cruelty and perfidy scarcely paralleled in the most barbarous ages, and totally unworthy the head of a civilized nation.

He has constrained our fellow-citizens, taken captive on the high seas, to bear arms against their country, to become the executioners of their friends and brethren, or to fall themselves by their hands.

He has excited domestic insurrections amongst us, and has endeavored to bring on the inhabitants of our frontiers, the merciless Indian savages, whose known rule of warfare is an undistinguished destruction of all ages, sexes, and conditions.

In every stage of these oppressions, we have petitioned for redress, in the most humble terms; our repeated petitions have been answered only by repeated injury. A prince, whose character is thus marked by every act which may define a tyrant, is unfit to be the ruler of a free people.

Nor have we been wanting in attention to our British brethren. We have warned them, from time to time, of attempts made by their legislature to extend an unwarrantable jurisdiction over us. We have reminded them of the circumstances of our emigration and settlement here. We have appealed to their native justice and magnanimity, and we have conjured them, by the ties of our common kindred, to disavow these usurpations, which would inevitably interrupt our connections and correspondence. They,

too, have been deaf to the voice of justice and consanguinity. We must, therefore, acquiesce in the necessity which denounces our separation, and hold them, as we hold the rest of mankind, enemies in war, in peace, friends.

We, therefore, the representatives of the United States of America, in general Congress assembled, appealing to the Supreme Judge of the world for the rectitude of our intentions, do, in the name, and by the authority of the good people of these colonies, solemnly publish and declare, that these united colonies are, and of right ought to be, free and independent states: that they are absolved from all allegiance to the British Crown, and that all political connection between them and the state of Great Britain is, and ought to be, totally dissolved; and that, as free and independent states, they have full power to levy war, conclude peace, contract alliances, establish commerce, and to do all other acts and things which independent states may of right do. And, for the support of this declaration, with a firm reliance on the protection of Divine Providence, we mutually pledge to each other our lives, our fortunes, and our sacred honor.

John Hancock, President

New Hampshire. — Josiah Bartlett, William Whipple, Matthew Thornton.

Massachusetts Bay. — Samuel Adams, John Adams, Robert Treat Paine, Elbridge Gerry.

Rhode Island. — Stephen Hopkins, William Ellery.

Connecticut. — Roger Sherman, Samuel Huntington, William Williams, Oliver Wolcott.

New York. — William Floyd, Philip Livingstone, Francis Lewis, Lewis Morris.

New Jersey. — Richard Stockton, John Witherspoon, Francis Hopkinson, John Hart, Abraham Clark.

Pennsylvania. — Robert Morris, Benjamin Rush, Benjamin Franklin, John Morton, George Clymer, James Smith, George Taylor, James Wilson, George Ross.

Delaware. — Cæsar Rodney, George Read, Thomas M'Kean.

Maryland. — Samuel Chase, William Paca, Thomas Stone, Charles Carroll of Carrollton.

Virginia. — George Wythe, Richard Henry Lee, Thomas Jefferson, Benjamin Harrison, Thomas Nelson, Jr., Francis Lightfoot Lee, Carter Braxton.

North Carolina. — William Hooper, Joseph Hewes, John Penn.

South Carolina. — Edward Rutledge, Thomas Heyward, Jr., Thomas Lynch, Jr., Arthur Middleton.

Georgia. — Button Gwinnett, Lyman Hall, George Walton.

OUR COUNTRY'S STORY

I

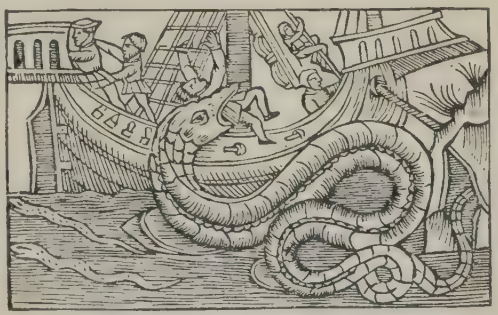
COLUMBUS SHOWS THE WAY TO AMERICA

If a group of schoolboys had been talking about their geography lessons four hundred years ago, one would perhaps have said:—

"Our teacher tells us that the world is flat. The land is in the centre, the ocean flows all around, and if any one should sail to the edge of the world, he would fall off." Early ideas of the world

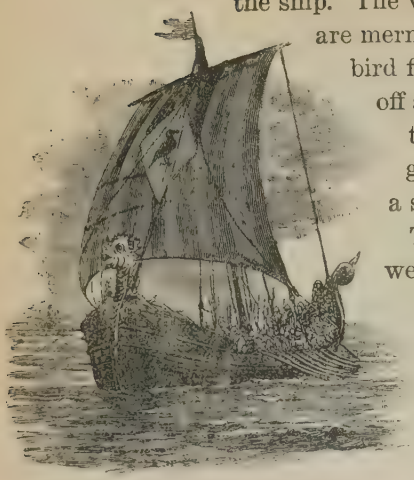
Then another boy would have said:—

"Our teacher told us that many learned men believe the earth is round; and he says a few of them think that if a ship should go through the Straits of Gibraltar and sail west across the Atlantic Ocean far enough, it would come to India."



DANGERS OF THE SEA OF DARKNESS
(From a sixteenth century illustration)

"But no ship could ever do that," another boy would have objected. "The Atlantic Ocean is the Sea of Darkness, and everybody knows that the farther you go from the land, the darker it becomes. There are thick, black fogs. In one place the sun is so hot that the water boils, and it might be hot enough to burn The Sea of Darkness



A NORWEGIAN SHIP

the ship. The waves are as high as mountains, and there are mermaids and horrible demons. A monstrous bird flies over the water, strong enough to carry off a great ship and all the sailors; and worse than that, Satan sometimes stretches up a great black hand as big as a cliff and draws a ship down under the sea."

These stories of the dangers of the ocean were not fairy-tales told to amuse children; they were what most men really believed. It is no wonder, then, that when the people of Genoa in Italy were asked to furnish funds for sending a ship across the Atlantic to India, they looked upon the plan as a wild and hopeless scheme. It is probable that five hundred years before this time some hardy mariners of Norway and Sweden sailed south from the settlement that they had made in Greenland, and even tried to found a colony in Massachusetts; but there is little reason to think that any one in Italy knew of their voyages.

It was one of the citizens of Genoa who had asked for this money, a man named Christopher Columbus. He was born in Genoa, and all through his boyhood he had seen ships coming into the harbor and unloading rich cargoes of spices, pearls, perfumes, silks, ivory, and fine Cashmere shawls. These luxuries were brought from eastern Asia, or the Indies, as people then called that country. The journey was long and hard, for the goods had to be taken on the backs of camels across great tracts of land to the eastern shore of the Black Sea. Then they were put on board ships and carried past Constantinople and over the Mediterranean to Genoa.

Trade with Asia

Columbus went to sea when he was fourteen, and three or four years later there were few rich cargoes from the Indies unloaded at the wharves of Genoa. The reason was that the Greeks had lost Constantinople to the Turks, and the Turks would not allow the Genoese vessels to pass through the Bosphorus.

Why this trade failed

CARAVAN TRAVEL IN ASIA

Columbus did not believe half the stories that were told about the dangers of the Sea of Darkness, and he reasoned: "If the earth is round, we can sail across the Atlantic to the very coast of Asia, and that would be a much easier journey than to go by the Black Sea." He thought that it would be an exceedingly short way, for even the learned men who believed that the world was round thought it only half as large as it really is. He had studied and read and thought, and he felt sure that he was right.

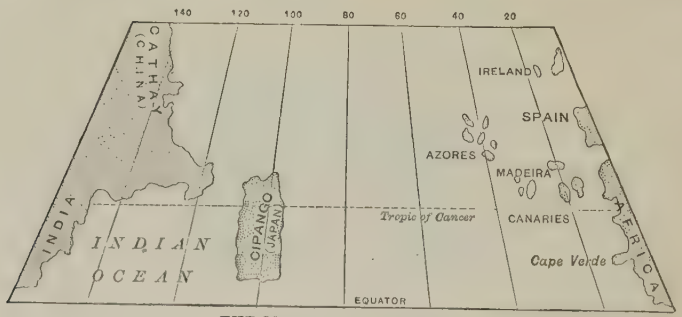
Columbus's reasoning

COLUMBUS'S ARMOR
(Now in Madrid)

Only a rich city or a king could provide money for such an expedition. Genoa had refused, but Portugal had long been interested in finding an easier way to India, and therefore Columbus went to see the king of Portugal. The royal advisers called the plan a foolish notion, but the king was half convinced that Columbus was in the right, and he said: "My advisers do not believe that your plan is possible, but I should like to borrow your maps and look into the matter for myself."

The king of Portugal deceives Columbus

The maps were lent most willingly, for Columbus thought that at last he had found a friend. After a while a ship sailed in from the west, and it became known that to make sure of the glory and gain for himself the king had sent out a vessel secretly. It went



THE MAP COLUMBUS USED

but a little way, however, because the captain was afraid of the high waves of the Atlantic.

Columbus goes to Spain

Columbus was so angry at this trickery that he took his little son Diego and went to Spain. King Ferdinand and Queen Isabella were on the Spanish throne, and to them Columbus appealed. Ferdinand called a council of wise men and asked them to decide whether these new ideas were reasonable or not. Now that so much more is known about the earth, some of the arguments brought forward by these learned councilors seem so foolish that it is hard to believe they were really in earnest. One asked: "How can there be people on the other side of the earth? Do they hang on by their feet? Do the trees grow down and does the rain fall up?" Another was willing to admit that the world was round. "But if you should go to the other side," said he, "how could you ever sail up hill and return?"

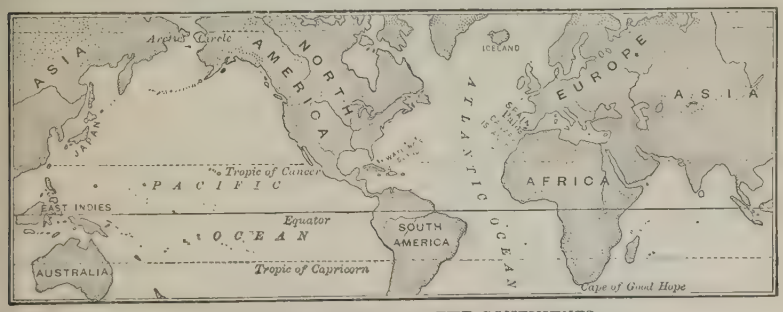
For several years Columbus waited. Spain was at war, and all the king would say was that he would consider the matter later.

People laughed at the wild dream of this persistent stranger. The children in the streets pointed their fingers at him and whispered, "Look! there 's the crazy man who thinks he can cross the Sea of Darkness!" Columbus had some reason to hope for aid from France, and he had sent his brother to England to ask for help. He determined to leave Spain.

Delay and discouragement

One morning a man with gray hair and keen blue eyes stood before the convent of La Rabida near Palos and asked for food for his little son. The prior of this convent was a learned man who was especially interested in geography. He noticed the stranger at the gate and began to talk with him. When he found what a wonderful plan he had in mind — for the stranger was Columbus himself — the prior wrote to Queen Isabella and pleaded for her aid. He told her what glory such a discovery would bring to Spain and how much wealth would pour in from the trade with the Indies. She became greatly interested, but a difficulty arose.

Columbus at La Rabida



THE REAL POSITION OF THE CONTINENTS

Columbus demanded the title of admiral, the right to rule over the lands that he should discover, and one tenth of all gains that might be made.

The Spanish courtiers were jealous that an unknown man, a foreigner, should dream of having so much power; and although he was ready to risk his life, one of them said to him sneeringly:

Jealousy of the courtiers

"You have nothing to lose if you fail, and you make sure of your title, whether you accomplish anything or not. You 're a shrewd man."

Isabella aids Columbus

Columbus was not selfish, but he felt that he had a right to share in whatever gain might come from his years of study and thought. Moreover, he needed a large sum of money to carry out

CONVENT OF LA RABIDA
(The part Columbus knew is to the right)

a plan of his for rescuing from the Turks, who ruled in the Holy Land, the tomb in which Christ was said to have been buried, and he declared that he would rather seek for the aid of France than yield a single point. The enthusiasm of Queen Isabella was aroused. "I will undertake the enterprise for my own crown of Castile," she declared, "and I will pledge my jewels to raise the necessary funds."

Preparations for the voyage

Then there was a bustle of preparation. For some misdemeanor the town of Palos had been required to provide two ships, well manned and armed, to serve the king for one year. The order was given that these two ships should be at Columbus's disposal. The sailors of the town were terrified at the thought of such a

journey. Some hid themselves, and others ran away. At last two brothers, wealthy shipowners, offered to go on the fearful voyage, and also to furnish one vessel.

After this some sailors volunteered, others were forced to go, and one morning in August the three small vessels, the Pinta, the Niña, and the Santa Maria, set out from Palos to cross the unknown ocean. The rudder of the Pinta broke, and a visit had to be made to the Canary Islands to repair it. Then word came that three Portuguese vessels had been seen off the coast waiting to capture Columbus. That matter was easily arranged, for he slipped past them directly out into the open ocean, knowing well that no Portuguese ships would dare to follow into the Sea of Darkness.

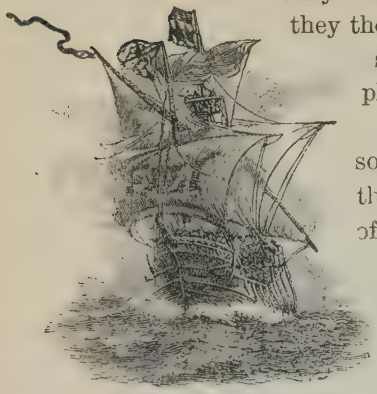
Columbus sails

QUEEN ISABELLA
(After a picture in Madrid)

The farther they went, the more frightened became the Spanish sailors. They wept and lamented, saying that never again should they see their homes and their friends. Everything alarmed them. The mast of a vessel floated by, and this they took as a sure sign that they would be wrecked. They saw a meteor, and they were certain that it was a bad omen. The wind blew steadily from the east, and the discouraged mariners wondered how they could ever make their way home. They found themselves in the midst of the great masses of seaweed that we call the Sargasso Sea, and

The fears of the sailors

then the sailors talked about quicksands and the dangers of running aground. The needle of the compass no longer pointed directly to the north star. That was worst of all, for they thought they had lost their way. They were so angry with the admiral that they even planned to throw him overboard.

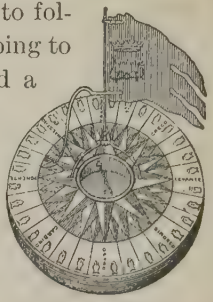


THE SANTA MARIA
(Columbus's own ship)

Columbus was very patient with them. He sounded many times to convince them that there was plenty of water below the weeds of the Sargasso Sea. He made up the best explanation that he could of the needle's failure to point to the north star, and he told them of the wonderful countries that they would soon see, the home of spices and perfumes, of gold and jewels. He told them how much land they would own and what great lords they would become, and so day after day he led them on.

Flocks of birds began to fly past, nearly all going to the southwest, and the course of the ships was changed to follow their flight, in the hope that they were going to the land. Fresh-water weeds were seen and a branch of thorn with berries on it. At last a piece of wood was picked up that some one had carved. Then the sailors were almost as eager as their leader to find the unknown country, and one after another began to declare that he could see land, and to claim the reward promised by Ferdinand and Isabella to him who should first discover the farther shore. Columbus increased the reward by the offer of a velvet doublet, but there were so many of these false alarms that he declared no man

Signs of land

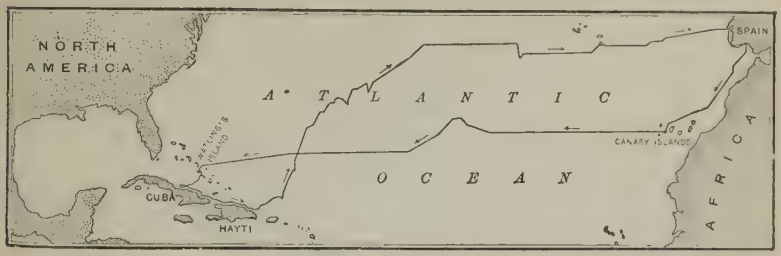


AN EARLY COMPASS

who shouted "Land!" should receive the reward unless land was discovered within three days after the time when it had been announced.

It seems only right that the great discovery should have been made by the admiral himself, and so it was, for one evening as he stood gazing into the west, he was sure that he saw a light that

Land at last



COLUMBUS'S ROUTE
(From Winsor's Columbus)

moved up and down as if some one was carrying a torch in his hand. Early the next morning, October 12, 1492, the land was in full view. Columbus put on his rich scarlet robes, took the royal banner in his hand, and was rowed to the shore. What a shore it was! The water was clear as crystal, the sand was dazzlingly white, there were strange trees and fruits, unknown flowers, birds of most brilliant plumage, and, strangest of all, great numbers of copper-colored natives, who at first hid behind trees, but soon gathered around the Spaniards, gazing with reverent curiosity upon their white skins, their steel armor, their glittering weapons, and especially upon the admiral in his scarlet dress.

The Spaniards knelt down and kissed the ground. They rose and chanted the Te Deum. Then Columbus unfurled his banner and formally claimed the land for Spain. He named the island San Salvador, or Holy Saviour. It was one of the Bahamas, no one knows which one, but many think that it was the one now

Landing of Columbus

THE LANDING OF COLUMBUS
(From Vanderlyn's painting in the Capitol at Washington)

known as Watling's Island. The natives he called Indians, because he supposed that he was on the coast of India. He asked the Indians where Cipango, or Japan, was, and they pointed to the south, for they thought that he meant some mountains with nearly the same name. They told him of "great water" to the westward, and he supposed they meant the Indian Ocean.

The Indians had a tradition that some day white men would come down from the skies to visit them. They were overjoyed that the heavenly visitors, whom they thought the Spaniards to be, had come in their time, and when Columbus asked some of them to go to Spain with him, they were delighted. Such a reception as the successful voyager had when he returned to Spain! There was a triumphal procession with soldiers and music and banners and gorgeous robes to escort Columbus to the king and

The return to Spain

3 1833 04329 5309

queen. He knelt before them, but Isabella begged him to rise and seat himself — a rare honor in the Spanish court — and tell them all about his voyage and his discoveries. What a wonderful tale it must have been!

There is a story that at a dinner in honor of Columbus not long after this reception a jealous courtier asked him: —

"If you had not sailed to the Indies, don't you suppose there are other men in Spain who would have made the voyage?"

Columbus shows the way

Instead of answering, Columbus held up an egg and asked if any one present could make it stand on end. No one succeeded, until he took the egg, broke the end slightly, and in that way was able to make it stand.

"Any one could do that," muttered the envious courtier.

"Yes," said the admiral quietly, "after I have shown the way."

That was the work of Columbus, to "show the way." He made three other voyages, visiting more of the Bahama Islands and the West Indies, and sailing along Central America, Panama, and the northern coast of South America. He tried to govern a colony of turbulent Spaniards in the New World, but he failed, and his enemies reported such malicious stories of him that a new governor was appointed for the colony. He put the great admiral in chains and sent him back to Spain. The captain of the vessel would gladly have removed the fetters, but Columbus said: "No, the rulers of Spain have put chains upon me, and they alone shall take them off. So long as I live I will keep these chains, and they shall be buried with me."

SOUTH AMERICAN INDIAN, 1497
(From the earliest picture)

Ferdinand and Isabella were indignant at such treatment of so great a man, and there was no delay in striking off the chains. Yet sovereigns

and kingdom were alike disappointed. Columbus had crossed the ocean, but he had discovered no gold; and although he was so sure that the islands were off the coast of India that he called them the Indies, no great oriental cities had been found, and there seemed no reason to expect any great wealth to come from the new lands. He fell into loneliness and suffering. The queen died, and he was friendless. Again the children in the streets pointed their fingers at him, the "admiral of the lands of deceit and disappointment," as they called him. He died neglected and forgotten. Seven years after his death, King Ferdinand built him a handsome tomb, but it would have been better to have treated him kindly when he was alive.

COLUMBUS
(From the statue in Fairmount Park, Philadelphia)

Columbus was a great man, neither because he was the first to sail across an unknown sea, nor because he thought the world was round, for a wise man named Aristotle believed that eighteen hundred years before Columbus's time; he was great because he knew what was true, and was ready to risk his life for truth's sake.

Why Columbus was great

SUMMARY.

Four hundred years ago most people thought the Atlantic could not be crossed.

New difficulties in getting goods from the Indies made Europeans wish to find a shorter route to Eastern Asia.

Columbus believed that ships could reach Asia by sailing west.

In vain he appealed for aid to Genoa and to Portugal. Finally, Queen Isabella became interested in his plan, and by the aid of Spain he set out on the voyage.

October 12, 1492, he landed on one of the Bahamas, but because he thought he was off the coast of India, he named the islands the West Indies.

Spain was disappointed that he found neither gold nor cities. Columbus died not knowing that he had discovered a new continent.

SUGGESTIONS FOR WRITTEN WORK.

Describe Columbus and Diego at the gate of La Rabida.

Give the conversation between Columbus and the prior.

What would a frightened sailor have said to Columbus to try to persuade him to return?

What would Columbus have answered?

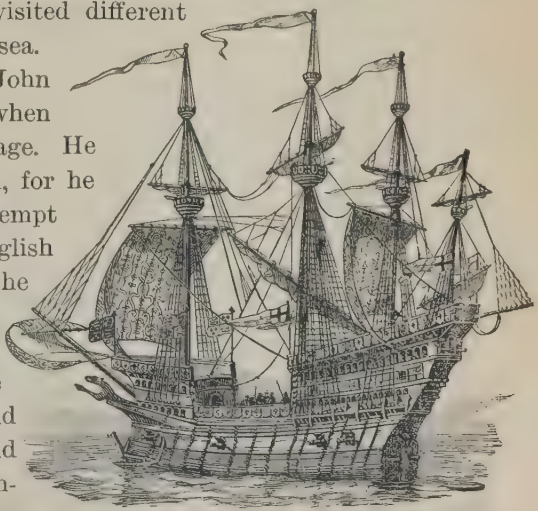
II

THE EARLY FOLLOWERS OF COLUMBUS

Voyages of the Cabots

Now that Columbus had shown the way, others were ready to follow, and within fifty years Italians, Spaniards, Portuguese, Englishmen, and Frenchmen visited different parts of the land across the sea.

An Italian merchant named John Cabot was living in England when Columbus made his first voyage. He was eager to cross the ocean, for he longed, as he tells us, "to attempt some notable thing." The English king was much interested, but he did not care to spend the necessary money. Moreover, he was trying to arrange a marriage between his ten-year-old son and the little daughter of Ferdinand and Isabella, and the Spanish ambassador told him there would be



ENGLISH SHIP OF THE SIXTEENTH CENTURY

CABOT DESCRIBING HIS VOYAGE TO THE ENGLISH KING
(From an old engraving)

trouble with Spain if he should send out explorers. After a while, however, he gave John Cabot the royal permission to cross the ocean on condition that he received one fifth of the profits of the enterprise. In 1497, just before Columbus went on his third voyage, John Cabot set sail. He is thought to have steered almost directly west and to have been the first European to have a glimpse of North America, though whether he sighted land first at Labrador, at Newfoundland, or at Cape Breton, no one can tell.

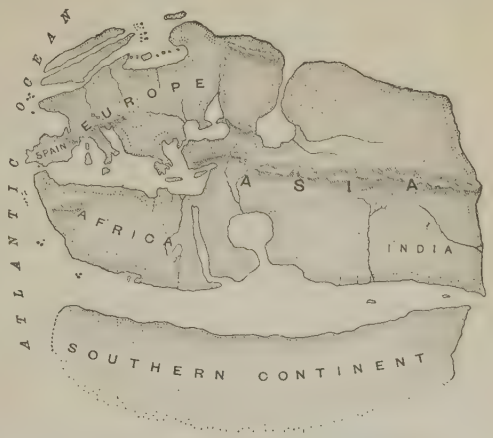
North America discovered

When he came home he was received in England with as much rejoicing as Spain had made over Columbus. An Italian who was living in England wrote to his friends in Italy, "Honors are heaped upon Cabot, he is called Grand Admiral, he is dressed in silk, and the English run after him like mad men."

The next year Cabot and his son made another voyage and cruised along the coast perhaps as far as South Carolina. These explorations were interesting, but no cities were found and no new opportunities for trade opened. England was disappointed, and sent out no more expeditions for nearly eighty years.

The land across the sea was not forgotten, however. Another Italian named Americus Vespucius sailed as a pilot, first in the service of Spain and then in that of Portugal. "What a thing it is to seek unknown lands!" he said. He followed down the eastern coast of South America, and finally went a long way east of Cape Horn. When he came home and told where he had been, there was much excitement. More than fifteen hundred years before this time a Spanish geographer had taught that south of Asia and Africa was a great body of land. People thought that Columbus had found India, and now that Vespucius had discovered a wide extent of country so far south of where Columbus had been, they thought it must be this southern continent which no one had visited, though most people believed it existed. In a little book on geography written soon after Vespucius's voyage it was suggested that this land should be named for him. That is why our country is named America; but Columbus is not forgotten, for in our songs it is almost always called Columbia.

Why our country is named America



THE IDEA OF A SOUTHERN CONTINENT BEFORE VESPUCIUS'S TIME

Ponce de Leon seeks the Fountain of Youth

Twelve years after the voyage of Vespucius, there was another expedition, the story of which seems like a fairy-tale. It was led by a wealthy Spanish nobleman named Ponce de Leon, who had been with Columbus on one of his voyages. His hair was growing white, and he longed to be a young man again. There was an old story that somewhere in Asia was a magical fountain whose waters would make an old man young. So many things were new and strange and mysterious in those days that this seemed no more impossible than anything else; and when De Leon heard that the Indians declared there was such a fountain in their land, he could not rest till he had tried to find it.

SPANISH HELMET

Discovery of Florida

He had been living in Porto Rico as governor, and therefore the voyage to the mainland was a short one. He landed on the coast of Florida on Easter Sunday, and as the Spanish word for Easter is "Pascua Florida," or Flowery Easter, he gave the name of Florida to the new land. It was a beautiful country, full of bright green trees, and flowers of many colors. There were rivers and lakes and springs. "Surely among all these," thought De Leon, "we shall find the Fountain of Youth." However, though he drank the water now of one and now of another, and hoped at each draught that he would feel himself becoming stronger and younger, nowhere did he find the magical fountain. Instead of growing young in Florida, it was there that he met his death, for the Spaniards had treated the Indians so badly that they hated the white people whose coming with Columbus had been so welcome, and on De Leon's second visit he died by an Indian arrow.

PISTOL OF DE LEON'S TIME

The year 1519 had come. Many different voyagers had sailed to America. They had landed on islands, or had explored the

coast for a little way, but few realized that a vast new continent lay west of the Atlantic. Most people thought all this expanse of land was connected with southeastern Asia, and that to the west of it lay the cities with which Europe had traded. They hoped there was some passage through this land which would give them a short route to India. One man who was especially interested in this idea was a Portuguese named Magellan. He was a warm-hearted man, and it is quite possible that one reason why he wished to cross the seas was because a dear friend of his was in the eastern Indies.

Magellan's idea of a passage to India

The king of Portugal refused to have anything to do with the expedition. Then Magellan asked, "Have I your majesty's permission to offer my services to some other monarch?" The king replied shortly, "Do as you please," and would not allow Magellan to kiss his hand at parting.

MAGELLAN

Magellan did not wish to give up the voyage, and he sailed in the service of Spain, though Spain and Portugal were not on the best of terms. He had five ships, and the brother of his friend was captain of one of them. He went to the eastern coast of South America, and when he came to the La Plata River, he felt almost sure that this was the passage that every one was hoping to find. He explored the stream for three hundred miles, but it grew narrower and the water grew fresher. There was nothing to do but to go back to the coast and try to find some other passage. He sailed to the south, keeping near the shore. There were fearful storms that strained and weakened the ships, no one knew what dangers were before them, and they were short

He sails in the service of Spain

of food. "Let us go home," pleaded the sailors. "Our ships are weak, and we shall either be wrecked or else die of starvation." "Never," answered the commander, "I will go on if I have to eat the leather from the ship's yards."

On he went. The sailors rebelled. "He is only a foreigner," said they, "and what better service could he render to the king of Portugal than to lead a company of Spaniards to certain death?" They even seized some of the ships, but Magellan found a way to

ROUTE OF MAGELLAN'S SHIPS

suppress the mutiny, and sailed on until he came to the strait that bears his name. Through the strait he went, and behold, a wide ocean stretched out before him! This ocean seemed so calm and peaceful after all the storms that he had been through that he named it the Pacific. It is said that when he saw the quiet water, he was "so glad thereof that for joy the tears fell from his eyes."

He enters the Pacific Ocean

The sailors were in despair, but it would do no good to rebel, for they were so far from Spain that there was not nearly enough food to last for a return voyage. The only course was to press on in the hope that aid would be found somewhere in the wide ocean. It was long before the help came, and they suffered so severely from hunger that they actually did eat "the pieces of leather

Across the Pacific

which were folded about certain great ropes of the ship." At last they came to a group of islands where they could indeed buy some food, but the natives proved to be so dishonest that the Spaniards called them "Ladrones," or thieves, and the name has clung to the whole group of islands.

NATIVES OF MAGELLAN'S STRAITS

First voyage around the world

Soon Magellan reached the Philippines, and there he was killed in a fight with the natives, but not before he had met ships coming from the west, and knew that his vessels could make the rest of the journey home through well-known waters. One of them did this, and in 1522 the first voyage around the world was completed.

The New World

The name, New World, had often been used, but until this voyage of Magellan's was made, few thought that this New World was a great double continent. Some supposed that what we call North America was probably a group of islands, and that somewhere among these islands there was a passage through which ships might sail to Japan without going as far south as Magellan had done. They spoke of this strait which they hoped to find as the "Northwest Passage," and one man after another went out hopefully in search of it. How discouraged these bold navigators would have been if they had known that no such passage would be found until the middle of the nineteenth century, and that even then it would prove to be so far north as to have little practical value!

PHILIPPINE CANOE

France is interested in the New World

In all these early voyages whoever landed on an unknown shore unfurled his banner and claimed the land for the sovereign in whose service he had sailed. France began to feel that it was time for her to have a share in these new countries, for even if there were no rich cities with which she could trade, there might be gold mines and precious stones. There is a tradition that the French King said: "Show me Father Adam's will that gives the earth to Spain and Portugal and shuts out France."

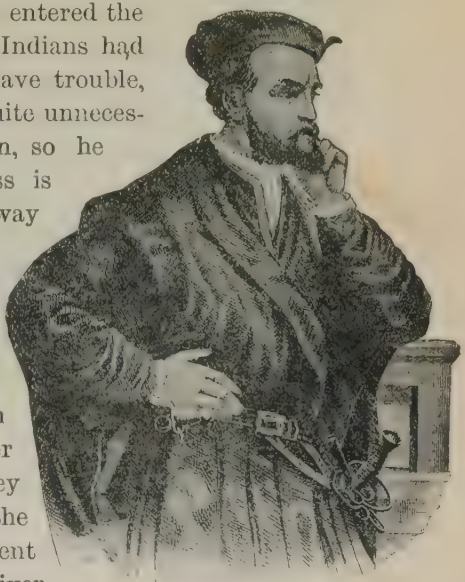
Spanish voyagers had gone to South America and Mexico, and from those countries gold was pouring into Spain; but if the Northwest Passage could be discovered, the nation that controlled it need not envy Spain her wealth, for trade with the Indies would be as valuable as a gold mine. In 1534 a Frenchman named Jacques Cartier went in search of the passage. He seems to have thought that there was a better chance of finding it farther north, for he sailed directly west to Newfoundland, which the Cabots had probably first visited. He went into a beautiful bay, but it was so warm that he could think of no better name to give it than Baie des Chaleurs (Chaleur Bay), or the bay of heat. In the usual fashion of the early explorers,

A MEXICAN INDIAN

Jacques Cartier

he claimed the land for his king and set up a great wooden cross. The natives had received him kindly, but when the cross was set up, the chief spoke as well as he could by signs and said: "This is my country, not yours. I am its king, not you." This made no difference to Cartier, for it never entered the minds of these voyagers that the Indians had any rights. He did not care to have trouble, however, and he thought it was quite unnecessary to tell the truth to an Indian, so he said: "That is nothing. The cross is only a beacon to show sailors the way to your country."

French claim in America established



JACQUES CARTIER

When once in the Saint Lawrence, Cartier hoped that he had found the Northwest Passage, but just as it had been with Magellan in the La Plata, so it was here, for the stream grew narrower and the water fresher the farther they went. At last they had to admit that this was not the Passage so long desired. Cartier went on, however, to an island in the river where Montreal now stands. Here was a little Indian village. Back of it was a high hill, and the view from this hill was so beautiful that he named it Mont Réal, or the royal mountain. To the river itself he gave the name Saint Lawrence, because he had discovered it on Saint Lawrence's Day.

The Saint Lawrence explored

A few years later another great river, the Mississippi, was visited. This discovery was made by De Soto, the Spanish governor of Cuba. He set out with a thousand men in nine ships. He carried with him cattle, mules, horses, and also fierce bloodhounds which were sometimes used to hunt the natives. It is

De Soto's expedition

DE SOTO REACHING THE MISSISSIPPI
(From Powell's picture in the Capitol at Washington)

no wonder that the Indians who had welcomed the Spaniards so warmly became as savage as the invaders, and tortured every Spaniard that fell into their hands.

The Mississippi River discovered

De Soto had been told that if he went to the westward he would find a land rich in gold, so to the west he made his way. He came to the Mississippi River in 1541, but he found no gold. The Indians had become bitter enemies, two thirds of his thousand men had died in the wilderness, and he decided to build two boats, float down the river to the Gulf of Mexico, and then push on to Cuba. Before the boats could be made, De Soto died. He was so hated by the Indians that, for fear they should insult his grave, his followers hollowed out the trunk of an oak and buried their dead leader at midnight in the waters of the mighty stream that he had discovered.

Nearly fifty years had passed since the first voyage of Columbus. Spain, England, Portugal, and France had all sent out explorers. The general course of the Spaniards and the Portuguese had been to lands around the Gulf of Mexico and to the south of it. The English had sailed to Newfoundland and Labrador. The French had explored the Saint Lawrence. Both English and French had explored part of the eastern coast of North America.

Explorations of different nations

SUMMARY.

Within fifty years after the voyage of Columbus: —

The Cabots visited the mainland of America.
Vespucius coasted along South America.
De Leon went to Florida.
Magellan's ship sailed around the world.
Cartier explored the Saint Lawrence.
De Soto discovered the Mississippi.

These voyages, together with that of Columbus, gave Spain, France, and England claims to land in North America.

They proved: —

That the world was round.
That it was much larger than had been supposed.
That a continent lay between Europe and Asia.

SUGGESTIONS FOR WRITTEN WORK.

Write a conversation between two persons about the New World.
Describe Cartier's planting the cross at Chaleur Bay.
Describe the burial of De Soto.

III

THE EARLY ATTEMPTS TO MAKE SETTLEMENTS

OLD SPANISH GATEWAY AT ST. AUGUSTINE

Claims of France, England, and Spain

As has been said, it was the custom for each explorer to take possession for his king of whatever land he visited. This is why the French claimed the country about the Saint Lawrence, the English claimed all between Maine and Florida, and the Spanish claimed Florida, Mexico, the West Indies, and South America. There were no boundaries between these territories, no one knew how far west the continent extended, and each sovereign had a vague idea that he had a right to all the land that was connected with the place where his explorer was the first to land.

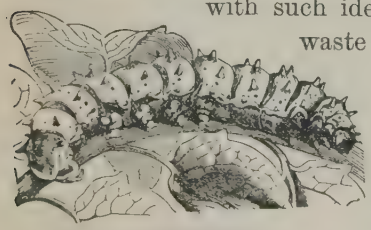
Fifty years after Columbus's death neither Spain, France, nor England had settled on the mainland of what is now the United States. Different explorers had tried to found colonies, and even on Columbus's first voyage some of his followers were so delighted with the new country that they persuaded him to allow them to remain there when he sailed for home. This colony failed,

however, and so did all the others. The chief reason was that the colonists had no thought of making their homes in the New World. What they wanted was to fill their pockets with gold or pearls or diamonds and then go back to Europe to spend their money.

Why the early colonies failed

SPANISH TREASURE SEEKER
(Showing the soldier's cuirass and halberd)

Filled with this idea, they paid little attention to the character of the region to which they were going. What the soil was, and whether it was a good place for a home, made little difference to them. So much treasure had been found in America that men were ready to believe that anything was of value if it only came from across the ocean. The caterpillars of Florida they took for remarkably fine silkworms. Quartz crystals from near Quebec they felt sure were diamonds, and when a sea-captain carried home a black stone from the frozen lands north of North America, he was immediately sent back across the ocean for a cargo of black stones, for the wise men of London declared that the specimen was full of gold. To colonists with such ideas as these, it seemed absurd to waste their time planting corn, when by a little searching they could perhaps discover a gold mine. This is the chief reason why during the second fifty years after Columbus discovered America only two permanent settlements were made in what is now the United States. One was at Saint Augustine, in Florida, which the Spanish founded in 1565. The other, also Spanish, was at Santa Fé in New Mexico.



A SILKWORM

First permanent settlements in the United States

Sir Walter Raleigh

Of the colonies that failed one was unlike the others. This was founded by Sir Walter Raleigh, the best known Englishman of his time. He was an admirable leader and a brave soldier, as well as the author of some very good poetry and an interesting history of the world. Whatever he undertook he did well, and he always seemed to know just what to do. There is a story that one day Queen Elizabeth wished to cross a piece of damp ground. The attendants did not know how to save her Majesty from setting her royal foot in the mud, but, quick as thought, Sir Walter spread his rich velvet mantle on the ground before her, and the queen passed over safely. Whether this is true or not, the warrior poet was a successful courtier, and Elizabeth was inclined to grant whatever he asked.

He was greatly interested in the New World, and he had some

BIRTHPLACE OF SIR WALTER RALEIGH AT HAYES IN DEVONSHIRE

ideas that were unlike those of most men of his time. Others had thought that the chief value of America lay in the gold mines that might be found there; Raleigh believed that if colonists would form real settlements and cultivate the ground, their sowing and reaping would be worth more than the vague chance of

discovering a mine. Most men thought that if the Northwest Passage could be found, Europe would become enormously rich from trade with Asia. Raleigh dreamed of America's becoming a second home of the English nation. "And when the land is full of English towns," he thought, "what need will there be of trading with Asia? Will not this American England give us a market for our manufactures?"

Raleigh's thoughts about America

QUEEN ELIZABETH
(From a portrait in the Queen Victoria collection)

Raleigh was a rich man, and he straightway sent out two ships to explore the coast of America. The next thing to do was to interest Queen Elizabeth in the plan. A man named Richard Hakluyt knew more about America than any one else, and Raleigh asked him to write a book for her, telling why it would be a good thing for England to have colonies in the New World. Hakluyt gave many reasons. He brought forward the hope that America would become a market for English manufactures. He declared that England would soon have neither food nor work for her people. It was becoming so much more profitable to raise sheep than grain that large numbers of English farmers were turning their farms into sheep pastures. They no longer planted grain, and as one man could care for many sheep, the men who had been working on farms had nothing to do. It is no wonder that many people agreed with Hakluyt.

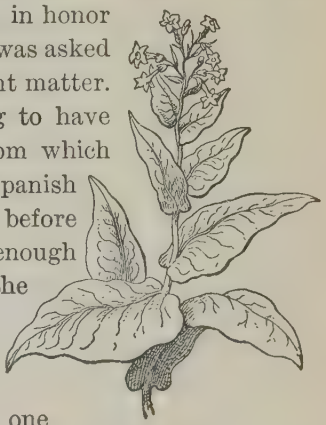
Reasons for planting colonies

Another strong reason was that England could weaken Spain by having colonies in America. English vessels, he said, could easily go forth from these colonies and capture Spanish treasure ships, as well as drive the Spaniards from the Newfoundland fishing grounds. Spain would no longer receive the vast amounts of gold that had been coming to her from her American possessions. "Then is there no doubt," said Hakluyt, "but the Spanish empire falls to the ground, and the Spanish king shall be left bare as Æsop's proud crow."

QUEEN ELIZABETH'S COACH

Objections to planting colonies

Elizabeth was much interested in the plan, and on the return of Raleigh's exploring vessels suggested that the land which they had visited should be called Virginia in honor of her, their virgin queen. When she was asked to send out a colony, it was a different matter. No doubt it would be a good thing to have powerful settlements in America from which vessels could be sent out to capture Spanish ships, but it would be some years before these settlements would be strong enough to do anything of the kind, and in the mean time England needed all her money and all her ships to meet an attack that was threatened by Spain.

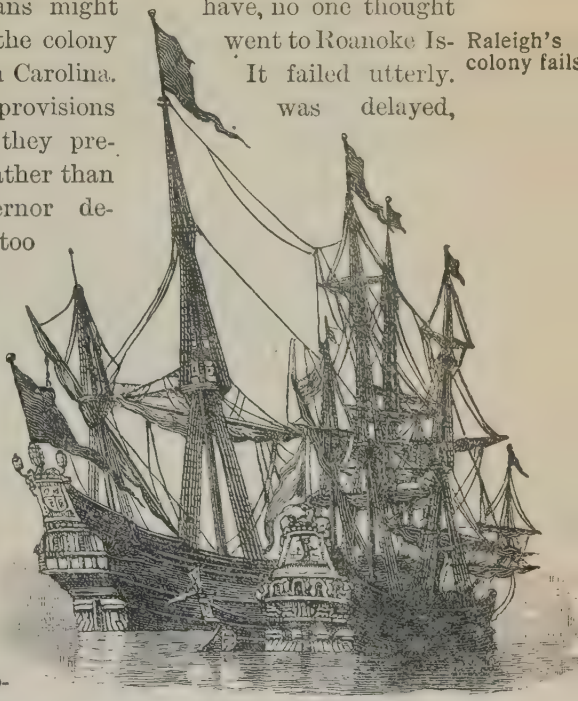


TOBACCO

Finally Raleigh sent out more than one hundred emigrants at his own expense. The queen had granted him a generous tract of land, for "Virginia" was to extend from Cape Fear to Halifax, and she had promised that American colonists should have all the privileges of men born

and living in England, and that they should make such laws as they thought best. England claimed this vast area of land because of the discoveries of the Cabots. Elizabeth said that Spanish claims were nothing where Spain had no settlements, and as for any rights that the Indians might have, no one thought of them at all. In 1585 the colony went to Roanoke Island, off the coast of North Carolina. It failed utterly. The promised ship with provisions was delayed, the men were homesick, they preferred to search for gold rather than to work, and the governor declared that they talked too much! An English vessel came to the island, and they all went home. They carried with them potatoes and tobacco, and from that day to this, as has been said, "the air of England has never been free from tobacco smoke."

Raleigh's colony fails



SPANISH TREASURE SHIPS

Two years later Raleigh sent out a second colony to the same place, this time of men, women, and children. Not long after they landed, there was born to the governor's daughter a little girl, who was the first child born in America of English parents. She was named Virginia Dare. No one knows what became of this little American girl, for the governor had to return to England; and when three years later he was able to go back to the colony, the little granddaughter and all the other colonists

His second colony

had disappeared. There is a tradition that some Indians were at first kind to them, but afterwards murdered nearly all. It was rumored that one young girl was among the few that the savages spared, but whether it was the child Virginia, no one can tell.

Raleigh had not forgotten the colonists during those three

SPANISH ARMADA ATTACKED BY THE ENGLISH FLEET
(From an ancient tapestry in the House of Lords)

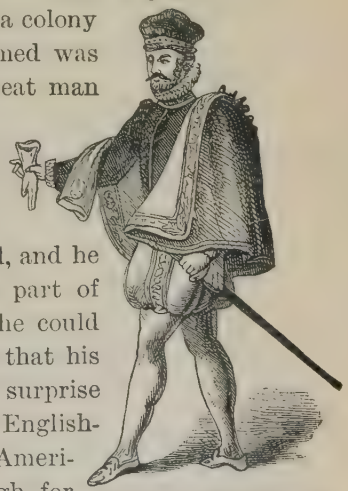
Why Raleigh did not help the colonists

years. He tried to send a vessel to them, but it was driven back to port by the Spaniards. He tried again, but the English government had need of every ship in the kingdom, and his vessel was seized for the service of his country. This was in the famous year 1588. Spain was determined to conquer England, and she had fitted out a great fleet of warships. The Spanish word for fleet is "armada," and Spain was so sure that no other vessels could resist her onslaught that she called the fleet the Invincible Armada. This attack was not for money or possessions; the king of Spain meant to become also king of England. The whole land was aroused. Every one who owned a vessel went out to fight the Armada, and the end of the matter was that the Spanish ships were so shattered by the English attacks and by storms that not more than one half ever returned to Spain.

Before this time England had always been afraid of contests with the Spaniards, for Spain was a rich and powerful country. English vessels were so often captured by Spanish men-of-war that even if English colonies had been planted in America, the colonists could not have been sure of receiving food and supplies from England; but after the victory over the Armada, England was "mistress of the seas" and could plant her colonies where she would. Spain was thoroughly subdued and seldom ventured to interfere.

England is "mistress of the seas"

This contest took place while Queen Elizabeth lived; but when she died, King James, the next sovereign, seemed to care for nothing else so much as winning the friendship of Spain. Now Spain hated Raleigh, not only because he had fought against the Armada, but because he had tried to plant a colony and to find a gold mine on what she claimed was Spanish soil; and to please Spain this great man was kept in prison for twelve years, and finally executed on a false charge of treason. Prisoner as he was, he never gave up his interest in America. "I shall live to see Virginia an English nation," he said, and he did see the beginning of a new home for part of the English people across the ocean. If he could look upon America now, he would think that his dream had come true, though it would surprise him greatly that the colonies planted by Englishmen were no longer under English rule. Americans should never forget Sir Walter Raleigh, for he was one of the first men in the world to believe in the wonderful future that lay before our land.

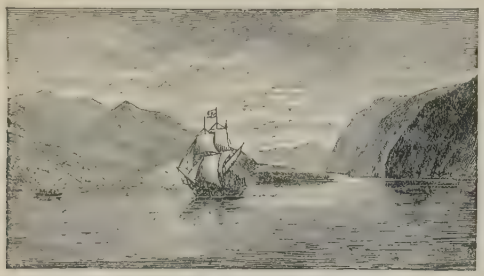


SPANISH GENTLEMAN OF THE ARMADA PERIOD

In 1600 America had been known for one century. People had by that time a fair idea of the shape of South America, but,

Ideas about North America in 1600

although explorers had coasted along the eastern shores of North America, and also along the western shores as far as what is now called Oregon, no one had any notion of the shape or size of the northern half of the New World. From Florida to where New York now stands might be a solid mass of land, they thought, extending to California, but Canada and all the northwestern part of what is now the United States many supposed to be one great sea broken by islands. From Virginia across the land to this vast northern ocean they thought was perhaps one hundred miles.



SEEKING THE NORTHWEST PASSAGE
(The Hudson River explored during the search)

Search for the Northwest Passage

Explorers hoped to find a strait through this land, and whenever a mariner came to the wide mouth of a river, he would say to himself, "Surely I am the fortunate man who has discovered the Northwest Passage." If he sailed up the river, he found the water less salt with every mile, and at last he would turn his ships about and sail back, saying, "The Northwest Passage must lie farther north, or it may be farther south." Never would he say to himself, "There is no Northwest Passage."

SASSAFRAS

Although Raleigh saw farther into the future of America than most other men, he was not the only

one interested in the New World. Valuable woods and dyestuffs had been found; sassafras had been discovered, and sassafras was the fashionable medicine of the day, the remedy that would cure all diseases. Merchants began to feel that there were as good opportunities for gain in America as elsewhere in the world.

Increased interest in the New World

Other books than Hakluyt's were written to show that it was worth while to plant colonies. One strong reason for making settlements in America was that by founding colonies England might have a larger share in the American fisheries. Great quantities of fish were caught off the shores of Newfoundland. Many more Frenchmen than Englishmen had taken advantage of this fact; but if only there were colonies near the fishing grounds, the English fishermen could be protected from their enemies, and the colonists could salt and dry fish and have it ready to send home to England.

CODFISH
(The most important of the American fishes)

SUMMARY.

France, England, and Spain all claimed a share in the New World, but in 1600 there were only two permanent colonies. — Saint Augustine in Florida, and Santa Fé in New Mexico. Both were Spanish.

Raleigh believed that America would become a second home of the English nation. He planted two colonies on Roanoke Island, but both failed.

England's defeat of the Armada enabled her to plant colonies without fear of Spain.

In 1600 the shape of North America was unknown. The continent was thought to be much narrower than it is. It was also believed that a passage led through it to the Pacific.

England was feeling interested in the Newfoundland fisheries, and merchants were finding that there were opportunities for gain in the New World.

SUGGESTIONS FOR WRITTEN WORK.

Raleigh writes a letter to Queen Elizabeth, asking for help to found a colony.
One of Raleigh's colonists writes a letter home describing the potato.
What became of little Virginia Dare?
What Raleigh would think of America to-day.

IV

THE INDIANS AND THEIR WAYS

The different Indian tribes

INDIAN DWELLING IN THE SOUTHWEST
(The Pueblo of Wolpi in Arizona)

For many centuries before Columbus came to America the country was inhabited by a copper-colored people whom he called Indians, because he supposed that he was on the coast of India. There were many different tribes, and each tribe had a name, but for their race as a whole they had no other name than a word meaning "Men," or "Real Men."

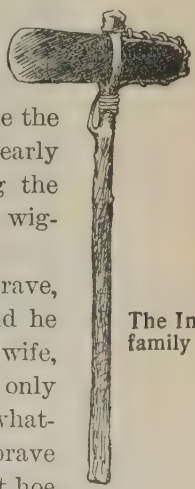
The Indians of the northwest never had any settled homes, but roamed about from place to place and lived on fish and game. Those of the southwest lived in fortresses of stone, often built four or five stories high up the face of a cliff, and

each of them large enough to make a dwelling for two or three thousand persons. Those of the east, the ones with whom the early English colonists had most to do, gathered into villages. They lived partly by the chase, and partly on some of the vegetables that are most easily raised, — corn, beans, pumpkins, and squashes.

SQUAW CARRYING A PAPOOSE

The Indians who dwelt in villages sometimes built long houses large enough for many families, with a division for each family. Sometimes they made wigwams. For these they drove poles into the ground in a circle and fastened the tops together for a framework. Then they spread over this framework the bark of trees, or skins fastened together with the sinews of animals. Sometimes, like the people who lived in England in the early days, they wove slender twigs back and forth among the poles. The fire was on the ground in the middle of the wigwam, and the smoke made its way out as best it could.

Long houses and wigwams



A STONE AXE

Each family had its own wigwam. The husband, or brave, must protect his wife and children from their foes, and he must procure whatever meat and fish were used. The wife, or squaw, must provide the vegetables. She must not only cook them, but she must plant the seed and give them whatever care was needed while they were growing. A brave would work to make bows and arrows, but he would not hoe the corn. If his family moved, he would stalk on ahead with his weapons, while his wife followed as best she could with the household goods.

The Indian family

This seems at the first glance like a most unfair division of labor, but it must be remembered that when the brave fished, he

The brave had something more to do than to bait his hook and drop it into the water. He must make his hook before he could bait it, and he must make his line from the fibrous bark of some tree. If he needed a pole, he must cut it, not with a sharp steel hatchet, but with a dull stone knife and he must also make the knife. His boat was either a birch-bark canoe, or a "dug-out," which was hollowed out of the trunk of a tree. Making a boat, as well as almost all other work that the Indians did, was long, slow, and wearisome.

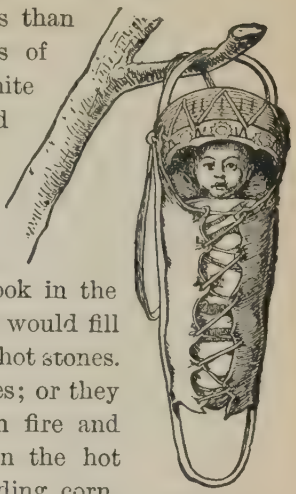
The household goods of the Indians were few. There was per-

MAKING A CANOE WAS SLOW AND WEARISOME WORK

haps a basket or two, some skins to sleep on, a bowl made of clay hardened in the fire, and not much else. If there was a baby, or

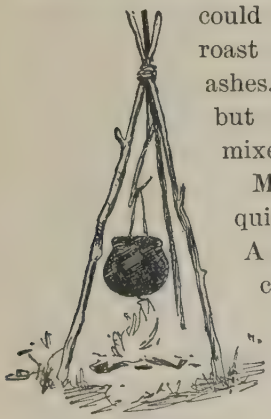
The papoose papoose, in the household, it was not allowed to lie on the ground or creep about as white babies do. An Indian mother would have thought it very careless to treat her precious child in such a fashion. The Indian baby was carefully wrapped in the softest of skins and tied to a framework of wicker or wood. Then baby and framework were stood up in any safe place, or swung to the

branch of a tree, where the wind would rock the child better than a cradle, and the bright green leaves, gleaming in the sunshine and waving in the breeze, were prettier playthings than any that are found in the toyshops. The Indians of to-day who have not adopted the ways of the white people treat their children in the same manner, and the babies always look contented and happy.



THE INDIAN BABY'S CRADLE

When the children grew older, the girls were taught to do all the kinds of work that their mothers did. They learned to make baskets and pottery, to plant corn and cultivate it, and to cook in the clay bowls. If they had only dishes of wood, they would fill them with water and heat the water by dropping in hot stones. In this way they could boil their meat and vegetables; or they could broil the meat over the open fire and roast the potatoes and squashes in the hot ashes. They had no way of grinding corn, but they pounded it into a coarse meal, mixed it with water, and made cakes of it.



BOILING FOOD IN AN EARTHEN POT

Indian clothing

Making the clothes of the family did not require much time, for no one wore very many. A rudely woven garment of cotton or grass-cloth was enough for the summer, while leggings of skin and a fur cloak were a wardrobe for many winters. The Indian women liked pretty things as well as white women do, and they gave a great deal of attention to the shoes of the family. These shoes were called moccasins. They were made of soft, thick deerskin, and were embroidered with porcupine quills and tiny shells. It was partly because of this embroidery that the Indians were so delighted when the colonists gave them beads.

for beads were easier to use than shells and of much more brilliant colors.

Weapons

As the boys grew older, they were taught to do what their fathers did. They learned not only to fish and shoot, but to make their own fishhooks of bits of bone, and their own bows of wood with the sinews of deer for bow-strings. The heads of the arrows were made of stone, and the Indian boy must work patiently hour after hour, chipping off a little bit of stone at each blow, until he had brought the head to the proper shape. Then it was bound fast to the wooden arrow. He must make his knife by rubbing a bone on a rock until it had an edge. The tomahawk was made of stone, and that, too, was shaped and sharpened by being rubbed on a rock until it slowly came to be of the right form.

INDIAN WEAPONS

The Indian boys did not have an easy time by any means. Even their games were not what we should call play, for many of them were only tests to see who could endure most. It is said that one game was played by the boys putting red-hot coals under their arms. The boy who dropped his coal first was laughed at and despised, while the one who bore the pain longest was the hero of the day and was honored by the boys and by their fathers.

FISHHOOKS OF BONE

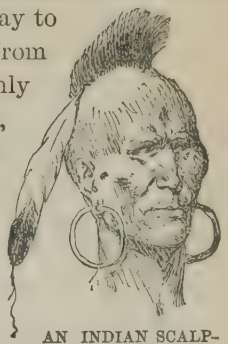
The scalp-lock

As soon as the boy was old enough to become a warrior, his head was shaved, except for one long lock of hair called the scalp-lock. When an Indian killed an enemy, he always "scalped" him, that is, he cut off a round piece of the skin of the scalp. This lock was left to make it convenient to cut off the piece of skin and carry it away. An Indian would

have thought it exceedingly cowardly to remove his scalp-lock before going to fight, and when he looked upon an enemy's, it seemed to say, "Take me if you can."

Their fighting was carried on in quite a different fashion from that of Europeans. The Indian had no idea of two lines of warriors facing each other and shooting till the men of one side had either fallen or run away. That would have seemed to him a most ridiculous thing to do. The proper way to fight, according to his ideas, was to shoot from behind rocks and trees, or to come suddenly upon his enemies with a horrible war-whoop, perhaps in the middle of the night, and kill them before they were fairly awake.

Method of fighting



AN INDIAN SCALP-LOCK

The Indians often tortured their prisoners, but perhaps not wholly from the fiendish delight, that some races have shown, in seeing the sufferings of others. To bear torture without a groan was their test of a great man. If the prisoner contrived to get the better of his captors by some deed of bravery, they showed him all honor. Only a few years ago, a young missionary won over a group of Indians in Dakota by riding a "bucking" pony that they had not been able to manage. "After that," said he, "I could preach to them all day if I chose, and they would listen to every word."

Each tribe had a chief, but all important questions were talked over in a general council of the braves of the tribe. The records of these councils were carefully kept, only the Indian way was not by pen and paper, but by the use of small shells made into beads and called wampum. Belts were made of this wampum, and as shells of different colors were used, sometimes pictures of men and animals were formed; but even if there were no pictures, the Indians could tell by the arrangement of the shells what had

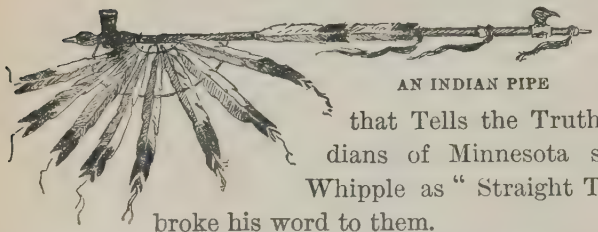
Wampum

been done at a council, or what treaties had been made. This wampum was not only a record, but the shells took the place of money, and for some time even the colonists used them for that purpose. After a while the Indians made their wampum of beads, and a handful of beads was to a red man what a handful of gold dollars is now to a white man. With this in mind, the price paid for Rhode Island, forty fathoms of white wampum, does not seem so ridiculously small.

INDIAN WAMPUM

Religion

The Indians thought that if they were brave warriors they would go to the "Happy Hunting Grounds" when they died. That they might be able to follow the chase in this world of happiness, their weapons were usually buried with them, and sometimes a dog was killed and laid at the feet of his dead master. They are thought to have believed in one Great Spirit, who was more powerful than all other gods, though they also worshiped the sun, rain, wind, lightning, or anything else that could help or harm them. They were honest and truthful with members of their own tribe, and they had a great admiration for any one among the whites who kept his word with them. Long after the early colonial days, a man in Pennsylvania was called among them "He that Tells the Truth"; and even now the Indians of Minnesota speak of the late Bishop Whipple as "Straight Tongue," because he never broke his word to them.



AN INDIAN PIPE

Treatment of the Indians by the whites

In their dealings with the whites, they always remembered a kindness, though they never forgot to avenge an injury. Almost all of the early explorers say that the Indians were at first gentle and friendly. The whites looked down upon them as heathen,

but it was often the Europeans that behaved like savages. Their treatment of the red men brought upon the colonists many of the attacks that filled their lives with fear and suffering. If there was any difficulty with the Indians, the whites would generally stand by one another; and for this reason the Indians felt that if one group of settlers had done them a wrong, they had a perfect right to avenge it on any other group.

Such were the people whom the early settlers in America had to meet. If from the first coming of the discoverers the red men had been treated with kindness, taught and not despised, many a story of suffering and bloodshed would have been unwritten. To the Spanish founder of Saint Augustine the Pope wrote: "Have a care that you show not bad habits and vices to the Indians, and so prevent them from becoming Christians." It is to be regretted that this advice was not always followed.

THE WARRIOR'S WAR DANCE

The red men looked upon the first white men that they saw as angels come down from the skies to counsel them and teach them. It was a sad thing for them and for the whole country that their first century of acquaintance with Europeans should have often shown them the white man, not as the kind teacher, but as the savage conqueror, ready for the sake of gold to torture, enslave, and murder the people who had welcomed him and trusted him.

SUMMARY.

Columbus called the natives of America Indians, because he thought he was on the coast of India.

The Indians that had settled homes lived in stone fortresses, in long houses,

or in wigwams. Their food was vegetables, fish, or the animals that they shot. Their tools and weapons were made of stone or bone. Their boats were canoes or dug-outs.

The papoose was protected by a wooden framework. The girls learned to make household utensils, to cook, raise corn, and make the clothes of the family. The boys learned to hunt, fish, and make their own weapons. Their games were often tests of endurance.

The warrior always had a scalp-lock. He shot from behind rocks and trees He often tortured prisoners.

Wampum was used for money and for keeping the records of the tribe.

The Indians believed that after death they would live again. They remembered a kindness, but never forgot an injury. They welcomed the first white men as teachers come from the skies.

SUGGESTIONS FOR WRITTEN WORK.

An Indian boy tells a white boy how to build a wigwam.

An Indian girl tells how her mother cooks the dinner.

The Indians held a council about making war upon the whites; what did they say?

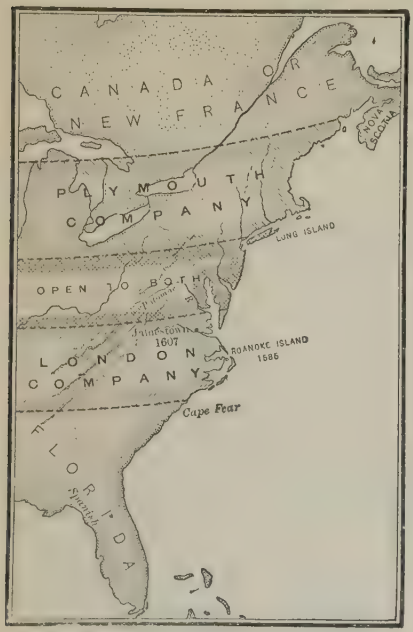
V

VIRGINIA, THE FIRST PERMANENT ENGLISH COLONY

Plymouth and London Companies

Sir Walter Raleigh at last concluded that planting colonies should be the work of a king or of a company of men, and he gave up his claim to the American lands. While he was in prison, two companies were formed to send colonists to Virginia. They were named the Plymouth Company and the London Company. King James gave to the Plymouth Company the land between Nova Scotia and Long Island, and to the London Company, the land between the Potomac and Cape Fear. From the Atlantic

to the Pacific is about three thousand miles. but no one supposed then that it was more than one or two hundred, and King James declared that these grants were to extend from ocean to ocean. The strip between the two claims was to belong to the company that could colonize it first. The Plymouth Company did little more than to coast along the shore and trade with the Indians, but the London Company founded the first permanent English settlement in America.



GRANTS TO THE LONDON AND PLYMOUTH COMPANIES

The London Company's first colony

In 1607 the London Company sent out one hundred and five men. Many prominent persons in England were interested in this colony, and Hakluyt wrote them a long letter of advice. He told them to be kind to the "naturals," as he called the Indians, but not to trust them. An English poet wrote a poem about "Virginia, earth's only paradise." In the plays of the time there was much talk about this marvelous country. One character says:—

Ideas of Virginia

"I tell thee, gold is more plentiful there than copper is with us. . . . All the prisoners they take are fettered in gold; and for rubies and diamonds, they go forth on holidays and gather them by the seashore to hang on their children's coats and stick in their children's caps."

The little company sailed for America. Up the coast they

went; between two points of land, which they named Cape Charles and Cape Henry in honor of the two sons of King James; and up a river, which they named the James River in honor of the king himself. On a peninsula which extended into the stream they decided to make their settlement. They called it Jamestown.

ENGLISH SOLDIER OF 1608

Everything was against the colony. They had thought more of defense than of good air, and they had settled where it was damp and unhealthy. The river water was not fit to drink. They had so scanty a supply of food that one pint of wormy wheat and barley a day was all that could be allowed to a man. Such a hot summer they had never known. Fever broke out, and more than half the company died.

Sickness and other troubles

CAPTAIN JOHN SMITH

Some of these troubles might have been avoided if the colonists had been a different kind of men, but half of them had no idea how to work with their hands. Some had come to see what adventures they might meet with, some to search for gold, and some with the hope of winning glory and a royal reward by finding the Northwest Passage. All these men needed houses, and there were but four carpenters in the party.

With sickness and hunger and helplessness there would have been little hope for the colonists if there had not been among their number one man, Captain John Smith, who knew what to do. He wrote the story of his life, and it is full of adventures almost as wonderful as those of Sindbad the Sailor. When he came to Virginia, he was only twenty-seven years of age, and in those twenty-seven years he had served as a soldier in three or four countries, and had been tossed into the sea as one whom a company of self-righteous pilgrims thought would bring them bad luck. Three times he had engaged in single combat with a Turkish champion, while two armies watched the contest with delight. He was taken prisoner by the Turks and made to wear a heavy iron collar. He escaped to Russia, and finally made his way back to England just in time to join the Virginia expedition. His story is a strange one, but in those days of wild adventures it was not impossible for such things to come to pass.

Early adventures of John Smith

SMITH DEFEATS THE TURKISH CHAMPION
(From a rare print. The crescent and cross above distinguish the Turk from the Christian)

Some of the Indians about Jamestown were hostile, others were inclined to be friendly. Smith contrived to compel the hostile tribes and persuade the friendly ones to sell the colonists corn. After a while he set out on an exploring trip up one of the rivers. He was taken prisoner, but he showed the Indians his pocket-

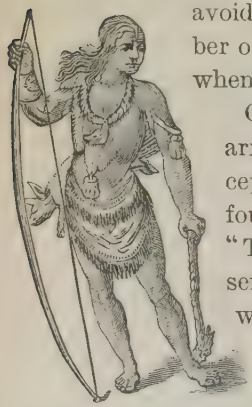
John Smith and the Indians

compass, and they hardly dared to kill a man who had such a wonderful article; he might bring some terrible evil upon them. After much discussion, however, it was decided to run the risk. His head was laid upon a stone,

Pocahontas

and the warriors were ready to strike, when Pocahontas, the little daughter of the chief, claimed the prisoner as hers, and his life was saved. This is the story that Smith tells, and there is no special reason for doubting it. It was not uncommon among the Indians for one of the tribe to rescue a prisoner in this way. The chief, Powhatan, was perhaps a little amused to see the child claiming the rights of a grown person; and then, too, he was half afraid to put the man to death, and it may be that he was glad to find a way to avoid it. Powhatan told Smith that he was now a member of their tribe and might go back to his white friends whenever he chose.

A GENTLEMAN OF 1610

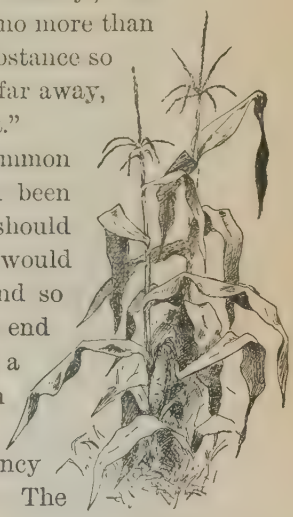


A VIRGINIA INDIAN
(From John Smith's map)

On the day of Smith's return another shipload of men arrived from England, but they would do nothing except to search for gold. Before long some earth was found that was full of bright yellow grains of metal. "That is gold," they cried in delight, and the ship was sent back across the ocean with what proved to be worthless dirt. A third shipload of men came, but they were like the others,—eager to search for gold, and with no idea of doing any work. John Smith was now governor of the colony, and he wrote to the London Company: "Send us but thirty carpenters, husbandmen, gardeners, fishermen, blacksmiths, masons, and diggers up of trees' roots, rather than a thousand of such as we have."

The third ship had also brought a letter from the Company. The men who had paid for carrying the colonists to Virginia thought it was time for them to receive some return from their investment. Their demands seem like the three feats required of the hero of a fairy-tale, for they said that the colonists must either send them a great lump of gold, or discover the Northwest Passage, or else find what had become of the English who had disappeared from Roanoke Island nearly twenty years earlier. "The Company are fools," said Governor Smith bluntly; but probably the Company thought that they had asked no more than was fair. They may have reasoned, "Where a substance so nearly like gold is found, there must be gold not far away, and it is mere idleness and laziness not to discover it."

Three demands of the Company



INDIAN CORN

What the colony would have done without the common sense of John Smith is a question. The plan had been that whatever money and food could be obtained should be divided equally. The lazy ones knew that they would fare as well whether they did any work or not, and so they idled their time away. Governor Smith put an end to that, and now if a man would not work six hours a day, no food was given him; and these idle gentlemen had to learn to hoe corn and cut down trees. The axes blistered their fingers, and they seemed to fancy that the pain would be less if they swore about it. The governor had an account kept of their oaths, and at night one can of cold water was poured down each man's sleeve for every oath that he had uttered during the day. This punishment, according to John Smith's "History of Virginia," was so successful that "a man would scarce hear an oath in a week."

The Indians began to see that the white men meant to stay in America, and they were not pleased. Even Powhatan refused to sell corn, but the child Pocahontas was friendly, and often the

Powhatan is unfriendly

lives of the colonists would have been much harder if she and her companions had not brought them corn and venison.

The starving time

Three years passed. Governor Smith was badly injured by an accident and had to return to England. Then came a terrible winter known as the "starving time," when the colonists suffered so severely from cold and famine that in the spring only sixty were alive out of five hundred. "It is of no use to try to live in Virginia," said they. "We will make our way to Newfoundland if we can, and then cross to England." They went aboard their small boats and were far down the river when, behold, three stately ships came into view, full of provisions. The colonists turned back joyfully, and Jamestown was saved.

On board the vessel was a new governor who ruled in much the same way as John Smith. He gave every man a piece of land and said, "You must work if you wish to eat." After a while the settlers became more willing to work, for they found that it paid better than searching for gold. A far-seeing man named John Rolfe had begun to raise tobacco. Smoking was now common in England, and smokers would pay a large price for Virginia tobacco, so before many years the poor Virginians were becoming the rich Virginians.

A VIRGINIA PLANTER

The Lady Rebekah

One chapter of the history of the colony might have come from a story-book. When the little girl Pocahontas was about twenty years old, she married the planter John Rolfe, who took his bride to England. The "Lady Rebekah," as she was there called, was received as a princess, the daughter of a great king, for even then people in Europe could not seem to understand that Powhatan was not a mighty sovereign governing a nation, but a naked savage ruling over a

little tribe in the wilderness. John Smith went to see the tall, handsome, dignified young woman, but when he addressed her as "Lady Rebekah," she was grieved and said: "But you must call me your child and let me call you father, just as we did in Virginia."

Powhatan sent several of his tribe to England with Pocahontas. He was anxious to know how many people there were in the distant land across the ocean, and to one of his men he gave a bundle of little sticks, telling him to cut a notch every time he met a white man. When the Indian landed in London, he took

Counting the English

JAMESTOWN IN 1622
(From an early Dutch account of Virginia)

one look at the crowds waiting to see the ship come in, grunted in amazement, and threw away his bundle of sticks.

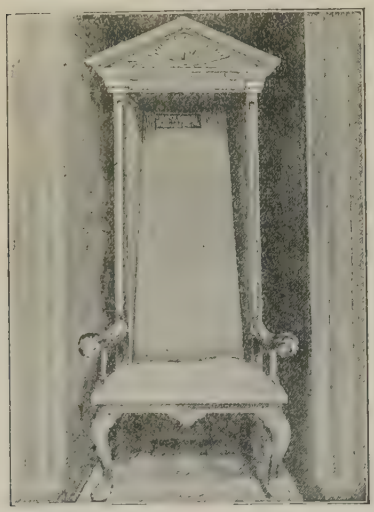
In 1619, when the settlement was twelve years old, three important events took place. The first was the arrival of a shipload of women. The London Company knew that unless the colonists had homes of their own, they would come back to England as soon as they had made their fortunes. It was much better for the Company to have permanent settlers than to have the land cultivated first by one man and then by another, so they brought over ninety respectable young women who were willing to live in the new country. There was many a suitor for the hand of

A shipload of women

every girl. The one whom she chose must pay the cost of her passage, — one hundred and twenty pounds of tobacco, — and soon there were ninety marriages and ninety homes. The coming of these women and of those who followed them was what made Virginia a permanent colony, for when the men had homes in the new land, they were no longer eager to make their way back to the mother country.

In England no one was allowed to tax the people except the House of Commons, and members of that body were not appointed by the king, but were chosen by the people. Thus far Virginia had been ruled by a governor appointed by the London Company. The settlers did not object to this, but they said that there ought also to be an assembly chosen by them, just as members of the House of Commons were chosen by the people of England, and that only such an assembly should have the right to tax them. The London Company agreed, and an assembly met, called the House of Burgesses, or citizens. This was the beginning of self-government in America, and was the second great event. A demand for similar rights of taxation, made by the American colonies a century and a half later, led to the Revolutionary War.

The House of Burgesses



SPEAKER'S CHAIR, HOUSE OF BURGESSES

The third event was the beginning of slavery. The Virginians were cultivating great plantations of tobacco, and they needed many laborers. It became the custom in England to send over

shiploads of criminals to serve the planters for a term of years. Kidnappers would steal children and even grown persons, if they had no friends to make trouble, and sell them to the planters. Sometimes poor people who wished to come to America would sell themselves, that is, they would agree to work a certain time for any one who would pay their passage. Even this supply was not enough, and in the year 1619 a Dutch ship brought twenty negroes to Virginia from Africa and sold them as slaves. So began that slavery which, two centuries later, had so much to do with bringing about the great Civil War that came near making our United States the divided states.

The beginning of slavery in America

Thus in the same year an English colony first began to be permanent, the ideas that led to the Revolution were first manifested in America, and the slavery which brought about the Civil War made its first appearance.

About half a century later, the Virginians again proved their determination to resist tyranny. Governor Berkeley had made himself very unpopular, and when the colony was attacked by the Indians, refused to defend it, because he was afraid of the militia. A volunteer force assembled, chose Nathaniel Bacon their captain, and defeated the Indians. Thereupon the Governor declared Bacon a rebel. Then there was rebellion indeed, and finally the Virginians set fire to Jamestown to prevent Berkeley from taking shelter there. Bacon soon died, but at least a score of his friends were hanged by the angry Governor.

Bacon's Rebellion

SUMMARY.

In 1607 the first permanent English settlement was made at Jamestown.

The colonists suffered greatly from sickness and want.

By the wisdom of John Smith the Indians were induced to furnish food, but after his return to England seven eighths of the colonists perished.

In 1619 women came from England, and the colonists began to have homes; the House of Burgesses, the first representative assembly in America, was established; and negro slavery was introduced.

SUGGESTIONS FOR WRITTEN WORK.

Powhatan tells a friendly chief about Pocahontas's saving John Smith's life.

John Smith's reply to the letter from the Company mentioned.

One of the colonists describes the punishment given to a profane person.

VI

PLYMOUTH, THE FIRST COLONY IN NEW ENGLAND

First settlement in New England

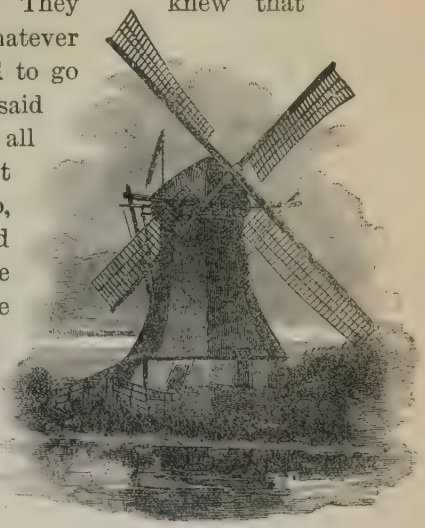
In 1620 the first settlement in New England was made at Plymouth in Massachusetts. The Virginia colonists came to America to make their fortunes; the Massachusetts colonists came that they might be free to worship God in the way that they believed would be most pleasing to him.

THE PILGRIM DRESS

In those times most people thought that every person in a country ought to belong to the same church as the king, and to pay taxes for the support of that church. King James belonged to the Episcopal Church, or Church of England, and he declared that he would make all his subjects attend it. Those who were not Episcopalians were fined and imprisoned without mercy. Among them were the Puritans and the Separatists. "Puritans" was a nickname that was given to those who said that they wished to make the church purer. The name "Separatists" was given to those who wished to leave the church, and these were the people whom we call the Pilgrim Fathers.

The king forbade them even to hold meetings at one another's houses, and whenever one of his officers found them doing this, they were either fined or imprisoned. They knew that in Holland men were free to attend whatever church they chose, and they determined to go to Holland to live. King James had said that he would "harry out of the land" all who would not attend his church, but when the Separatists were ready to go, his officers found out their plan and arrested the whole company. They made a second attempt, and a second time the king's men discovered the plan. At last they succeeded in making their way to Holland. They were in a strange land with a people whose customs and language were new, but they were free. For a while they were happy, but as their children grew older, the parents found that in spite of all that could be done, the young folks were learning the ways of the children around them and were talking in their language.

The Pilgrims go to Holland



WINDMILL IN HOLLAND

They had left their homes for the sake of religious freedom, but they still longed to live under English rule. They talked about Guiana, but decided that it would be too warm. In Virginia the Episcopal Church was in power. John Smith had explored the coast of New England and had given it its name, but he had reported that it was exceedingly cold. They concluded that the best place was somewhere between the Potomac and Long Island. The London Company would gladly allow them to settle on their land, but the king's permission must be gained.

They decide to go to America

When they asked King James for a charter, or written agree-

THE PILGRIMS' DEPARTURE FROM HOLLAND
(From an old Dutch painting)

ment that they might settle in America, he said no, he would give no charter, but they might go if they chose, and so long as they behaved themselves no one should disturb them.

The Mayflower sets sail

To England they went, and then set sail for America in two vessels, the Speedwell and the Mayflower. The Speedwell sprang a leak; and it is possible that the captain's report made the injury greater than it was, for he had agreed not only to carry the Pilgrims to America, but to remain there with them for a year, and he was sorry for his bargain. Over one hundred passengers

The voyage

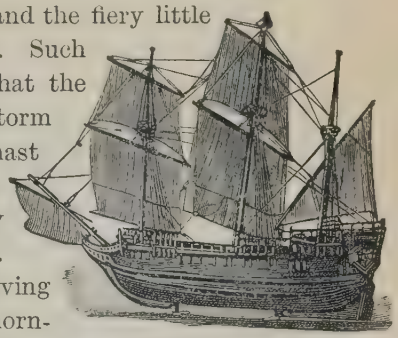
crowded into the Mayflower. Nine weeks they were on the ocean. There was an accident. Severe storms drove them out of their course, and forced them to take refuge in Massachusetts Bay instead of going farther south as they had planned. The land about the bay belonged to the Plymouth Company, but the Pilgrims knew that the Company would be only too glad to have

a settlement made on their territory, so they decided to stay where they were.

Before they landed, they met in the cabin of the Mayflower and wrote a paper promising to obey whatever laws should be made. After the paper had been signed, a party went ashore to explore the country and find a suitable place for their home. It was November. The shores were barren, "of a wild and savage hue," wrote one of the Pilgrims. No place fit for a settlement was found. For many days they explored the coast. The captain and the sailors grew more and more impatient. "Choose your place soon," said the captain, "for I shall keep enough food to carry my men to England." The sailors muttered, "We'll put your goods on shore and leave you."

In search of a home

Another party went out to explore. John Carver, the first governor, William Bradford, the second, and the fiery little soldier, Miles Standish, were of this party. Such troubles as they had! It was so cold that the spray froze to their clothes. A heavy storm began to rage, the rudder broke, and the mast snapped into three pieces. At last they reached land, but what land it was they knew not, for night had come upon them. They contrived to kindle a fire in the driving rain, and waited for the morning. When morning came, the sun shone bright and clear. They were on Clark's Island, and there they kept their Sunday with prayer and singing, for great as was their need, they would do no exploring on the Lord's Day.



THE MAYFLOWER
(From the National Museum model)

Monday morning they sailed to the mainland, and went ashore at a place that John Smith had named Plymouth, and that they now agreed to call Plymouth in remembrance of the English town from which they had sailed. This was the best place that they

Plymouth chosen

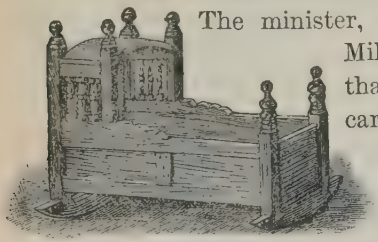
had seen, and it did not take them long to go back to the ship and report that they had decided upon a home. In Plymouth there is a rock which is carefully protected and guarded, for people believe that on this rock the explorers stepped ashore. December twenty-first, the day of their landing, is called Forefathers' Day, and is celebrated in their honor. There were a number of children on board, and after being crowded into the ship for so many weeks, they must have been glad enough to go ashore.

PLYMOUTH ROCK

There was no room to spare, even when they were on land, for after they had been in Plymouth all winter and all the following summer, there were but seven houses. For a while they had only one house into which they crowded their goods and as many persons as possible. Some had to remain on the Mayflower for several weeks.

Hardships of the first winter

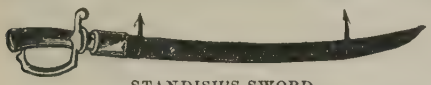
The story of the winter seems almost like that of the starving time in Virginia, though the Pilgrims were somewhat better supplied with food. One after another fell ill, and at one time only six or seven were well enough to take any care of the others. The minister, William Brewster, and the brave soldier, Miles Standish, were the most tender nurses that could be imagined; but in spite of their care, more than half the company died in the first three months, sometimes two or three in a day. Before they left the Mayflower a baby was born to Mrs. White, and was named Peregrine from the Latin word *peregrinus*, meaning a wanderer. Strangely enough, this little child was one of the survivors of the hard winter. The graves of those who died were leveled with the ground and sown


PILGRIM CRADLE
(It belonged to the Pilgrims' doctor)

with wheat, for Indians had been seen, and there was danger that they would attack the little settlement if they knew how many had died and how few were left to defend it.

One morning in the spring an Indian appeared who did not skulk behind the trees like the others, but walked straight into the centre of the village and called out, "Welcome, Englishmen, Welcome!" The Pilgrims must have felt very much pleased to have a word of greeting in the strange land. The Indian's name was Samoset. He had been among the fishermen farther north and had learned a little English. It was only a very little, but he made the Pilgrims understand that he had a friend, Squanto, who had been carried to England by one of the early explorers, and that Squanto could speak English well.

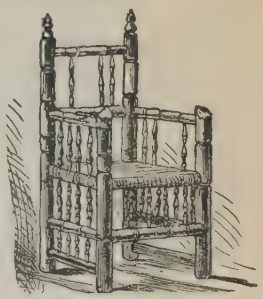
Samoset and Squanto



STANDISH'S SWORD

Before long the Indian chief, Massasoit, came with a number of attendants and Squanto for interpreter. Massasoit had dangerous enemies, — the Narragansetts, — and he wished to make a treaty with the white people so that he might have aid if he were attacked. The Pilgrims gave the chief and his attendants some presents and feasted them. Then the two parties made a solemn promise that they would assist each other, and that if a member of either party injured one of the other, he should be punished, whether he was an Indian or a white man. This treaty was kept for more than fifty years.

Treaty with the Indians



WILLIAM BRADFORD'S ARMCHAIR

The Pilgrims did not waste their time searching for gold; they cleared the land and planted corn. Squanto showed them the Indian way of making sure of a rich soil for the corn by putting a small fish into each hill, and he taught them many other things that helped them to live in the new country. When the first autumn came, they

PILGRIMS GOING TO CHURCH
(From a painting by G. H. Boughton)

The first Thanksgiving

were so happy at having a good harvest that Governor Bradford appointed a day for Thanksgiving, and invited Massasoit and ninety of his men to a three-days' feast.

Not all the red men were as friendly as Massasoit. One day a Narragansett Indian strode into Plymouth and asked for Squanto. "He has gone fishing," was the reply. Then the Indian threw down a queer looking object and stalked away. This proved to be a rattlesnake's skin wrapped around a bundle of arrows. There was little difficulty in guessing what that meant. The Narragansetts were a large tribe, but it would not do for the little company of colonists to show that they were afraid, and Governor Bradford stuffed the snakeskin full of powder and bullets and sent it back with the message, "If you want fighting, come whenever you like, and we will give you enough of it." Canonicus, chief of the Narragansetts, knew that powder and bullets did much damage in some mysterious way, and he was afraid to have the dangerous things about. He contrived to have them taken away from his lands, and for a long time there was no trouble with the Narra-

Trouble with the Indians

gansetts. Other tribes threatened the colony, but the valiant Miles Standish went out with his

"Great, invincible army,
Twelve men, all equipped, having each his rest and his matchlock,"

and came back victorious.

Plymouth was five hundred miles from the nearest English settlement, and three thousand miles from its king, but the colonists seemed to get along very well without a king. Whenever they needed to decide any important question, they held a meeting to talk it over. Then they voted, and the matter was decided as the greater number wished. This assembly was the beginning of the New England town meetings of to-day.

Town meeting

In England there had often been such wild revelings on Christmas and other church holidays that the Pilgrims had decided to make no difference between these days and others. After a while, some people joined the Plymouth colony who did not agree with this decision; and on Christmas morning, when the governor called the men out to work as usual, they said it went against their consciences to work on Christmas Day. "Very well," said the governor, "no one shall force you to act against your consciences, and I will spare you until you are better informed." At noon, the governor found these men having a fine time playing ball and other games. He stood looking at them a moment; then he said, "It goes against

GOVERNOR BRADFORD DEFIES THE NARRAGANSETTS

Christmas in Plymouth

your consciences to work, but it goes against *my* conscience to see you play while others work; so if you wish to keep Christmas as a church day, go to your own houses." He took away their ball, and they gave up their attempt to celebrate Christmas. Such was the Pilgrim's stern view of life.

MILES STANDISH'S ARMY

Though the Pilgrims suffered greatly during the early years of the colony, they never thought of leaving the country, as they might have, had they come merely to seek their fortunes. When trouble came to Plymouth, the Pilgrims would say, "We have come here to worship God in freedom, and He will not forget us." This is why the Pilgrims were never discouraged, and why they were happy in spite of all their hardships.

Why the Pilgrims were happy

SUMMARY.

Persecution in England drove the Pilgrims to Holland and then to America.

They founded a settlement at Plymouth, but more than half the colonists died the first winter.

The neighboring Indians were friendly, and the white men were victorious over the hostile tribes.

The Pilgrims cultivated the ground instead of searching for gold.

The New England town meeting originated in the Plymouth assembly for the discussion of important questions.

SUGGESTIONS FOR WRITTEN WORK.

What the last body of explorers reported to the Pilgrims waiting on the Mayflower.

The best way to celebrate Forefathers' Day.

One of the older children tells Peregrine White about leaving England.

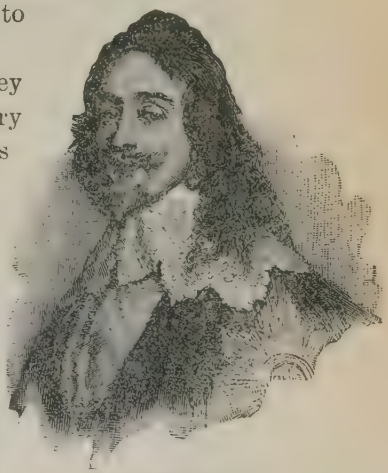
VII

THE MASSACHUSETTS BAY COLONY

One day some Puritans were talking of what the Pilgrims had done to find a home where they could worship God as they thought right. Some one suggested, "Would it not be well for us also to make a settlement in America?" The longer they talked, the more interested they became in the plan. Then they wrote to several of their Puritan friends in different parts of the country, and a number of them agreed to unite in forming a colony.

The Puritans plan a settlement

The Pilgrims were not rich people, and they had been obliged to borrow money to carry them to America, but many of the Puritans were wealthy, and every year their party in England was becoming stronger. They formed the Massachusetts Bay Company and bought of the Plymouth Company what is now the greater part of Massachusetts. They induced King Charles, son and successor of King James, to give them a charter, allowing them to make laws for the colony. Only one year after the little company of friends had talked about America, a shipload of Puritans were ready to cross the ocean. They landed north of Boston, and settled at a place to which they gave the name Salem. "Salem" is a Bible word meaning peace, and they hoped that here they would find peace.



KING CHARLES I

Founding of Salem

The Company moves to America

The Puritans in England were becoming more and more troubled. King Charles meant to rule the country just as he chose without the least regard to what any one else thought, and he was so untruthful that no one could trust his promises. Some people began to fear that there would be war between those who stood by the king and those who were against him. No one knew how such a war might end. If the king should win, he would be more opposed to the Puritans than ever; but if they had flourishing colonies in America, there would be one place where they could live in safety. In the king's charter not a word had been said about where the Massachusetts Company should hold their meetings. They decided to hold them, not in England, but beside Massachusetts Bay. It is quite possible that the king knew nothing about their decision until they had gone. Even then, he did not object, and it may be that he was glad to have so many who did not agree with him go out of the country.

THE NEW ENGLAND COAST SETTLEMENTS

Puritans with John Winthrop found Boston

A little later the English Puritans were pleased and encouraged, because John Winthrop, a man whom they greatly respected, said that he would go to America. He was not only rich and well educated, but he was so wise that almost all who knew him felt that whatever he advised was the best thing to do. He set out in 1630 with a great company of

ARRIVAL OF THE WINTHROP COLONY IN BOSTON
(From W. F. Halsall's painting)

nearly one thousand persons. They brought cattle, goats, provisions, arms, tools, and farming implements. Several ships were needed to carry so many people, and among them was the Mayflower, that had brought the Pilgrims to Plymouth, and had also taken the settlers to Salem. Governor Winthrop and his party decided to make their home where Boston now is. They called the place Boston, because many of the colonists came from Boston in England.

These people had been accustomed to living in comfort, and in spite of all their careful preparations the first winter was almost as hard for them as it had been for the other colonists. Provisions became scarce, and Governor Winthrop was obliged to appeal to the Pilgrims for help. A generous supply of food came from Plymouth. When that was gone, he asked the people of Boston to spend a certain day in fasting and prayer that God

Early hardships

would help them. The help came, for a ship laden with provisions sailed into the harbor, and instead of fasting, they kept a day of thanksgiving.

Contentment of the Puritans

The lives of the Puritans were hard, but nevertheless Governor Winthrop wrote to England that he had never felt more contented than in Massachusetts. Another governor of the colony wrote home to his Puritan friends that if they wished to make money, Massachusetts was not the place for them; but if they wished to have plenty of wood to burn and to build their houses with, pure air to breathe, good water to drink, ground to plant, seas and rivers to fish in, and if, above all, they wished to be free to worship God as they thought right, all these good things were waiting for them in Massachusetts.

WINTHROP CUP
(Given by Winthrop to the First Church, Boston)

Governor Winthrop was so honest and truthful in all his dealings with the Indians that they called him "Single Tongue," meaning that he never told two stories about anything. He was always ready to do a kindness. It was reported to him one day that a poor man was stealing his wood, and he declared sternly, "I'll soon put a stop to that"; but to the poor man he said, "Friend, I fear that you have not wood enough for the winter. Help yourself from my pile whenever you choose." Then he went to his informer and said, "Did n't I tell you I would put a stop to it? Find him stealing if you can!"

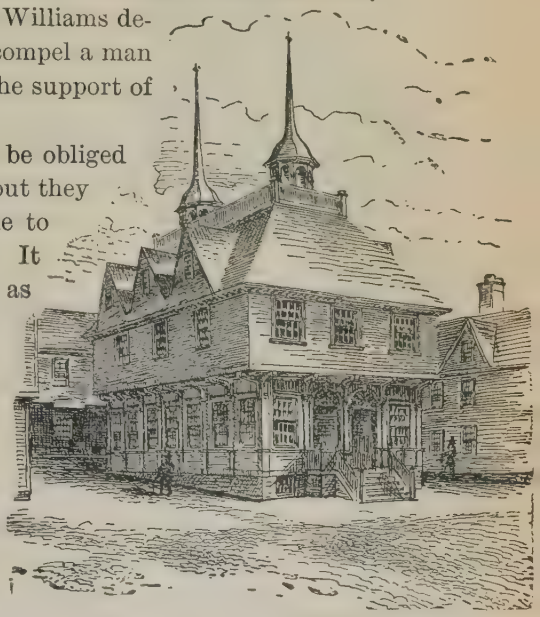
Puritan narrowness

The great fault of the Puritans was that they could not understand how any one else could be as earnest as they in wishing to serve God and yet not go about it in the Puritan way. They had borne a great deal for the sake of living as they believed right, and they meant to govern the new land as they thought best, and to allow no one to stay among them who did not agree with their ideas. They had town meetings like those of the Plymouth people, but they would let only members of their church vote.

The ship that brought them food when they were in such great need brought also a talented young clergyman named Roger Williams. He too wished to serve God, but he had some ideas that seemed to the Puritans very wrong. He said that King Charles had no right to give away the land of the Indians unless they were willing. "What would the king say to that?" whispered the colonists to one another. "He might even take away our charter." Still worse, Roger Williams declared that it was not right to compel a man to attend church or to pay for the support of a church against his will.

Roger Williams

The Puritans did not wish to be obliged to attend the Episcopal Church, but they did wish to oblige whoever came to Boston to attend their church. It would not do to have such ideas as Roger Williams's in their colony, they thought, and they told him that the following spring he must leave Massachusetts. John Winthrop contrived to send word to him that they were intending to send him back to England; so instead of waiting for spring, he went away from the colony in the bitterly cold weather. The tale of his life in the forest in snow and storm will be told in the story of the founding of Rhode Island.



FIRST TOWN HOUSE IN BOSTON, 1658

To have their children grow up without good schools was something that the Puritans could not bear. At first the parents taught their children at home as well as people who were so busy could teach, but only five years after the settlement in the wilder-

Harvard College founded

ness was begun, a public school was opened in Boston. Many of the Puritans were graduates of English universities, and they wished to make sure that when their ministers died other educated men would be ready to fill the vacant places. They talked the matter over in town meeting, and finally, in 1636, they agreed to give four hundred pounds to found a college.

JOHN HARVARD
(From French's statue in Cambridge)

At that time spending public money for instruction was very unusual in Europe. This generous appropriation shows how much the Puritans cared for education. They used to go to the college to hear the boys declaim in Latin and in Greek, and when one did especially well, his father was happy, and he would say to himself, "Perhaps my son will some day be a minister and preach in our church."

John Harvard

A clergyman named John Harvard died soon after the college was founded, and when his will was read it was found that he had left his books and half his money to the new school. The name "Harvard" was given in his honor. There were other gifts. The state gave a year's rent of a ferry. Plymouth and the other settlements that began to be scattered through New England were ready to help, and once each family gave a peck of corn or its value in wampum. A law was soon made that in every Puritan village of fifty families there must be a school; and if there were one hundred families, a schoolmaster must be engaged who could prepare the boys of the town for the university.

John Eliot teaches the Indians

Another reason why the college was founded was that the Indians might have an opportunity to be educated and to learn Christianity. A clergyman named John Eliot was especially

interested in them. He not only preached, but he translated the Bible into their language. He did even more; he lived in the wigwams and taught the Indians as if they were his children, and tried his best to answer all the questions that they asked. Some of these questions were not easy. "If the soul is shut up in iron," said they, "can it get out?" Another question was, "When you vote and make a man your governor, how do you know that he will be a good governor?" Another was, "Ought a wise man to obey an unwise chief?"

John Eliot was never weary of helping them in every way that he could. He taught the women to spin, and he showed the men better ways of tilling the ground. Many Indians learned to read and write English, and finally one of them delighted the Puritans by graduating at Harvard.

Progress of the Indians

Life was growing a little easier for the settlers. There was plenty of food, they had schools and a college, and they had sent away Roger Williams, whose ideas about the church differed from their own. Their next trouble came from the Quakers. The Quaker idea of what was right and what was wrong sometimes differed greatly not only from the Puritan idea, but from that of all the other English people: for instance, a Quaker would not take off his hat even to the king, because he thought that to do so would be showing to man a reverence which belonged to God alone. Other people thought that this refusal showed scorn of the king's authority, and the village of Boston was much alarmed when it was known that a few Quakers had come from England.

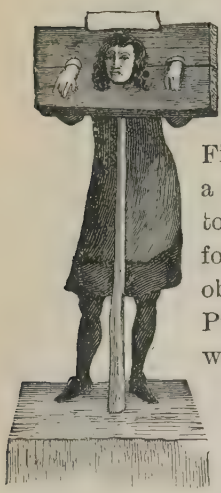
QUAKER DRESS

These early Quakers were so different from those of later days, and even from those who lived in Boston soon after these times, that it seems as if their minds must have been unbalanced by the persecutions in England. They certainly did strange things. One man forced his way into the court and

The Quakers and the Puritans

accused the judge of putting innocent men to death. Another went into the church with a glass bottle in each hand, and in the midst of the service broke the bottles before the people, and cried, "Thus will the Lord break you all in pieces."

The Puritans banished them, but they refused to stay away, for they said that they should obey God rather than man, and God wished them to preach to the people of Massachusetts. Then they were imprisoned or whipped or branded with hot irons. These penalties were brutal, but they were less severe than those inflicted in England upon men who disobeyed the laws, for while to-day a man is hanged only for wilful murder or for treason, there were then in England two hundred offenses for which one might lose his life. Finally, four Quakers who returned a second and even a third time after being ordered to stay away were put to death. The Puritans wrote to the king that these four were hanged because they persisted in refusing to obey the laws of the colony. This was true, but if the Puritans had not been quite so sure that their belief was the only right one, it may be that they would have had more charity for the Quakers and would not have made such severe laws against them.



THE PILLORY
(One of the Puritan punishments)

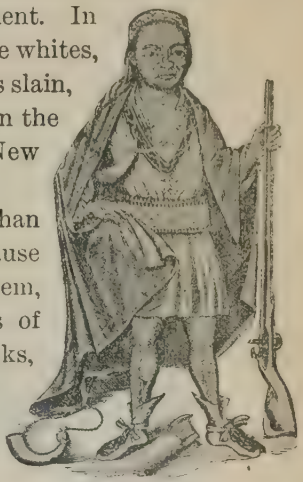
In 1675, almost twenty years after the coming of the Quakers, there was a terrible war between Indians and colonists. Massasoit was always true to the English; but after he was dead, his son, "King Philip," as he was called, had different ideas. Many more white men had come, little villages were everywhere, and Philip felt that if the English were not driven out at once, the country would be lost to the Indians. He persuaded other tribes to join him, and they made fierce attacks upon one village after another in Massachusetts, Rhode Island, and Connecticut. In Massa-

King Philip's War

chusetts more than half the towns were either partly or wholly destroyed. One thousand men and large numbers of women and children were slain.

Death of King Philip

At last King Philip was besieged at Mount Hope in Rhode Island. One of his men advised him to surrender, but Philip was so angry that he struck the man dead in a moment. In revenge, the dead man's brother crept away to the whites, and told them where to find his chief. Philip was slain, and his head was fastened to a pole and set up on the green in Plymouth. After this war, southern New England had no more trouble from the Indians.



KING PHILIP
(After Paul Revere's picture)

Witchcraft

When the Puritans had been in America more than half a century, they became greatly alarmed, because they believed that there were witches among them, and witches were thought to be special friends of Satan. Some nervous girls played various pranks, and declared, probably more in fun than in earnest, that they could not help it, for they were "bewitched." When they saw that the matter was taken seriously, it is very likely that they became so excited that they could not control themselves, and began to believe their own stories. These girls and others began to point out those who had bewitched them, and before the colonists came to their senses, nineteen innocent people had been hanged.

All over Europe people thought that there was such a thing as witchcraft. A century before the Puritans crossed the ocean, five hundred persons were put to death in three months on the charge of being witches. Fifty years after this alarm in Massachusetts a new law was made against them in England, and many people were executed.

SUMMARY.

English Puritans formed the Massachusetts Bay Company to insure them a refuge in time of persecution and a place for freedom of worship.

Under the leadership of John Winthrop they founded Boston in 1630.

They did not wish to have any one in the colony whose belief differed from theirs; therefore they drove away Roger Williams, and later the Quakers.

Harvard College was founded in 1636 to educate both whites and Indians. John Eliot did much good as a missionary to the Indians.

King Philip's War in 1675 caused many deaths and was the last of the Indian troubles in southern New England.

The Puritans executed nineteen persons for supposed witchcraft.

SUGGESTIONS FOR WRITTEN WORK.

A Puritan tells a friend why he wishes to go to New England.

The reply of the Pilgrims to Winthrop's appeal for food.

King Philip tells his men why he wishes to make war upon the whites.

VIII

MAINE, NEW HAMPSHIRE, RHODE ISLAND, AND CONNECTICUT

MAINE AND NEW HAMPSHIRE.

The kidnapping of Squanto

When the Indian Squanto, who was so good a friend to the Pilgrims, was a young man, he lived on the coast of what is now called Maine. One day a ship came to anchor near the shore, and the Indians paddled out in their birch-bark canoes to see the white men and sell furs to them. Squanto and four others were seized and carried away across the ocean, for the captain thought that after they had learned English they could be brought back and

made to serve as interpreters when the white men wished to trade.

It was an unpardonable crime. The only good thing about the whole story was that these five Indians were very kindly treated in England. Squanto and two others were taken into the family of Sir Ferdinando Gorges, who was a friend of Sir Walter Raleigh. Sir Ferdinando was only a few years older than the Indians, and he was much interested in them. It was not long before they could talk with him, and they told him so much about their friends and their home, the clear air, the pure water, and the great forests, that Sir Ferdinando and others began to be eager to found a colony.

Squanto in England

Sir Ferdinando had no trouble in finding sailors who would go to Maine and bring back a cargo of fish or furs, but colonizing was a different matter, for the men who first tried to make a settlement had reported that the place was too cold to live in. Still he was not discouraged. He sent out ship after ship to fish and to trade, and finally he persuaded one captain, who was also a physician, to spend the winter near where Saco now stands. This captain went home in the spring and said that the climate was perfect, and that not one of his men had even had a headache.

THE BEAVER
(An important New England fur-bearer)

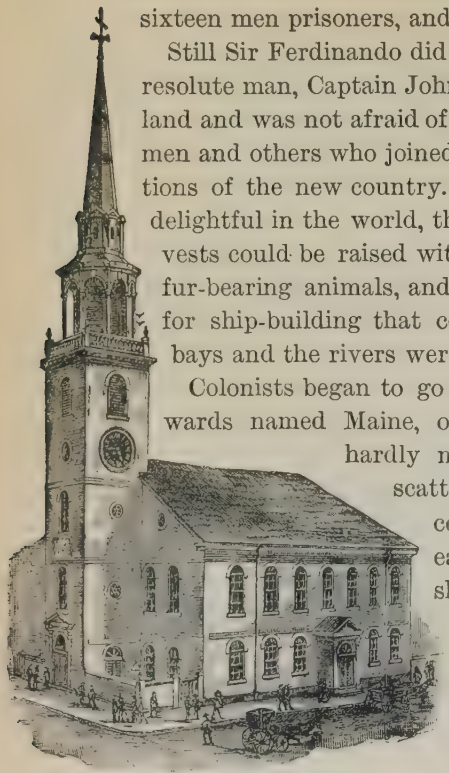
Attempts to found a colony in Maine

A few years after John Smith returned to England from Jamestown, he sailed as captain of one of Sir Ferdinando's vessels. Sixteen men were with him who had agreed to become colonists, and with such a leader to help and advise them, it is probable that they would have succeeded; but wherever John Smith went, he met with adventures, and so it was on this trip. England and

John Smith again

France were at war, and a French vessel took the captain and his sixteen men prisoners, and carried them to France.

Still Sir Ferdinando did not give up. He united with a brave, resolute man, Captain John Mason, who had been in Newfoundland and was not afraid of the cold weather of Maine. These two men and others who joined with them published glowing descriptions of the new country. They said the climate was the most delightful in the world, the soil was so rich that generous harvests could be raised with little work, the forests were full of fur-bearing animals, and the great trees were the best timber for ship-building that could be found. Besides all this, the bays and the rivers were swarming with fish.



THE OLD SOUTH MEETING-HOUSE[1]

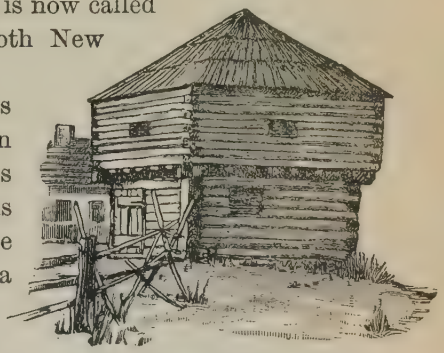
Colonists began to go to the new province, which was afterwards named Maine, or the *mainland*. The colonies were hardly more than fishing stations, and were scattered about over the southwestern corner of what is now Maine, and the eastern part of what is now New Hampshire. It is probable that the first settlement in Maine was made at Pemaquid Point in 1625. This soon became a busy place. Indians who had furs to sell came to Pemaquid, and ships came from England not only to bring tools and other things that the colonists needed, but to carry back to England lumber and furs, and the fish that had been caught and cured. The Pilgrims were cultivating corn, and they used to send boatloads of it to Pemaquid to exchange for furs. The earliest settlements in New Hampshire were made at Dover, 1623–1627, and at Portsmouth in 1631.

Dover and Portsmouth

[1] This brick structure, still standing, was erected in 1729 on the site of the wooden building mentioned on page 73, of which there is no picture.

After a while Sir Ferdinando and Captain Mason concluded to divide their land; the former took Maine, and the latter took the land to the west of the Piscataqua River. Captain Mason was once governor of a town in Hampshire, England, and in memory of this he named his land New Hampshire. How far west this land extended was uncertain, and what is now called Vermont was claimed at times by both New Hampshire and New York.

The colony divided



BLOCKHOUSE IN MAINE
(Built near the junction of the Kennebec and Sebasticook rivers)

In 1641 the few scattered settlements in New Hampshire asked the protection of the Massachusetts Bay colony. As for Maine, after Sir Ferdinando died, his grandson offered to sell the land to the English king, Charles II. The king was a little slow in giving his answer, but Massachusetts was quick, and before Charles II. had decided whether he could raise the money or not, Massachusetts had bought the land and paid for it. The king was angry that a colony should dare to do such a thing as to buy land that he wished to have. Boston wrote him a letter saying that she was sorry to have displeased his Majesty, but she made no offer to give back the purchase. One man in Boston wrote indignantly to a friend in England that the king's letter was worth no more in Massachusetts than an old London newspaper.

Maine joined to Massachusetts

This was hardly true, but it was true that more than once when the king had made a law which would injure the colony, Massachusetts had quietly disobeyed it. More than that, the Puritans would not allow the Episcopal Church in their colony, and this did much to arouse the wrath of the king. Charles sent over and demanded their charter. The Puritans held a town meeting in the Old South Meeting-House, and every man voted

Massachusetts loses her charter

not to return it. Then the king declared that whether the charter was in England or in America, it should no longer hold good. He planned to send over one of the most cruel, hard-hearted men in England as governor; but before this could be done, the king died. The charter, however, no longer had any value.

New Hampshire and Massachusetts royal provinces

New Hampshire had been made a "royal province," and now the new king declared that Massachusetts, Plymouth, and Maine should form another. These colonies could no longer choose their own officers, but must be ruled by whatever governor the king chose to send them.

RHODE ISLAND.

When Roger Williams was ordered to leave Massachusetts, the court told him that he might remain until spring. They thought that he would keep still if they showed him so much favor; but instead of keeping still, he preached oftener than ever. Then the court said he must be taken to England, and a boat was sent to Salem to bring him to Boston. However, when the officers landed in Salem, Roger Williams was nowhere to be found. Some one had warned him secretly, and he had slipped away. The one who warned him was, as has been said, no less a man than John Winthrop, and with the warning had come the advice to go to the Indians about Narragansett Bay, because that place was free from any English claim.

FIRST MEETING-HOUSE IN SALEM
(Where Roger Williams is said to have preached)

Roger Williams leaves Salem

It was a cold, snowy night when the message came, but there was no time to lose, so Roger Williams said good-by to his wife

and children, took his staff, and went out bravely into the wilderness. When he was an old man, he said he could "feel yet" the winter snow of that journey.

His wanderings

For more than three months he lived in the forest. Sometimes he had a guide, but oftener he found his way alone as best he might. Sometimes he slept in a hollow tree; often he had no fire. He had friends in the forest, however, for he had always been kind to the Indians and had learned their language. They were glad to repay his kindness, and when he came to the wigwam of Massasoit, there was a warm welcome awaiting him. Canonicus, too, the fierce warrior who had sent to Plymouth the bundle of arrows bound together with a rattlesnake's skin, gave him tender greeting, and "loved him as a son."

Providence founded

Possibly Roger Williams had no thought of founding a colony. He had always cared for the Indians, and now that the whites would not listen to him, perhaps he meant to live among the red men and teach them. Five friends came to him from Massachusetts, however, and they paddled down the Providence River in search of a place to settle. Some Indians saw them and called out in friendly welcome, "What cheer? What cheer?" an old-fashioned form of greeting that they had learned from the whites. He ran ashore and had a little talk with these Indians. Probably they told him of a good place for his house, at the foot of a hill near a spring of water. This was in 1636, and was the beginning of the city of Providence, so called because, as Roger Williams said, it was by the providence of God that he had made his way thither.

Growth of the colony

The exile's wife and children soon came to him. Governor Winslow of Plymouth visited him and gave him a piece of gold. The Puritans wished people to worship God in their way; Roger Williams wished every one that came to his colony to be free to worship God in any way that he thought right. Before two years

had passed, many had come. He was in the country of the Narragansetts, and Canonicus was glad to sell his friend what land he wanted for a colony.

Rhode Island and Providence Plantations

Among those who came from Massachusetts was a company that meant to go farther south, but Roger Williams urged them to stay near him, and Canonicus was willing to sell them the Isle of Rhodes, or Rhode Island. The two colonies made a kind of agreement to help each other. That is why the smallest state in the Union has the longest name, for the name that must be used in legal documents is "State of Rhode Island and Providence Plantations."

ROGER WILLIAMS
(From the statue in Providence)

This tiny state was almost the only place in the world where some one form of worship was not favored. It is no wonder that people with all kinds of ideas came to settle beside Narragansett Bay. It has been said that "if a man had lost his religious opinions, he might have been sure to find them again in some village of Rhode Island."[1]

A few years later, Massachusetts, Plymouth, Connecticut, and New Haven agreed to defend one another if there was need. Rhode Island would have been glad to join the league, but the others said this could not be unless the colony would become a part of either Massachusetts or Plymouth. Maine, too, was shut out, because the laws of Maine favored the Episcopal Church.

The New England Confederacy

Rhode Island asks for a charter

It seemed impossible for the little state to stand alone without some protection, and the Rhode Islanders sent Roger Williams to England to ask for a charter. The story of what he had done for the Indians had gone before him, and the English government

[1] Bancroft's *History of the United States.*

willingly gave him a charter, allowing the Rhode Island colonists freedom to make whatever laws they thought best and to choose their own governor and other officers. Roger Williams crossed the ocean again, happy in the news that he was bringing to the colony. When he came to the bank of the river that flowed by his house, he saw that the whole shore was lined with canoes, for the people of Providence had all come out to welcome the man whom they respected and loved. His canoe was placed in the midst, and so they paddled to the farther shore.

Roger Williams's character

It is no wonder that they welcomed him, for Roger Williams was one of the most lovable men that appear in all the colonial history. The Puritans had driven him into the wilderness, and then had made him lose many thousand pounds by forbidding him to send goods from the port of Boston to England, but even of them he had not a hard word to say, and when the opportunity came to do them a favor, he did it as eagerly as if they had been his warmest friends.

CONNECTICUT.

English invited to settle on the Connecticut

A colony that is only sixteen years of age seems hardly old enough to begin to found other colonies, but this is just what Massachusetts did. Not long after the coming of the Puritans, the chief of the country along the Connecticut River had asked both Massachusetts and Plymouth to send Englishmen to settle on his lands. Some of the colonists began to think of going there to trade. It was an especially good place, for the Indians could much more easily float down the stream with their canoes full of furs than they could make their way through the forest and bring the furs on their backs.

Trouble with the Dutch

The English were not the only ones who saw that it was worth while to get possession of this valuable river. The Dutch were settled in New York, and they had forts in New Jersey. They too

wished to hold the Connecticut. The Plymouth people thought that the English had a better right to the territory than the Dutch, and a few of them set out for the mouth of the river. They carried with them the frame of a house, and, although the Dutch threatened to fire upon them from the fort at Hartford, kept on up the river. When they were where Windsor now is, they set up their house, and began to trade for furs as calmly as if there was not a Dutchman in the land. Others came, the Dutch were driven out, and in Hartford, the very place where the Dutch fort had stood, there was soon a small company of Englishmen.

INDIAN FUR-TRADERS

It was a hard winter, and it may be that report made the sufferings of the settlers even worse than they really were, for several hundred people who lived near Boston were thinking about moving to Connecticut, and the other colonists did not wish to have them leave Massachusetts. Those who wished to go said that the towns in Massachusetts were so near together that there was not pasture for their cattle. "But you have made a solemn promise to support and aid our commonwealth," said the court. "That is true," answered they, "but how better can we support it than by keeping both the Dutch and the English who do not think as we do from settling so near us?" There was also another reason for moving, but little was said about it. In the Massachusetts colonies no one was allowed to vote who was not a member of the Puritan church; and most of the people who

Puritans decide to settle in Connecticut

wished to move to Connecticut thought that every man should have a right to vote. At last the court agreed that they might go.

The first settlers were led by their pastor, Thomas Hooker, of Cambridge. There were about one hundred in this company, and they must have had a delightful journey. It was June. The trees were green, and the flowers were in bloom. Through the forest they went, making their beds of the boughs of trees, sleeping under the stars, and waking to the singing of birds. Two weeks they spent on the journey, and it must have seemed almost like a picnic two weeks long. There was no fear of hunger, for before them they drove one hundred and sixty cattle, and there was sure to be plenty of milk, even if all other food failed.

A forest journey

These were the people who in 1636 founded Hartford. Others came, and within a few months Wethersfield and Windsor were settled by colonists from other towns near Boston. A few people had come to these places before, but until 1636 there were not enough to call their coming the founding of a town.

Settlements established

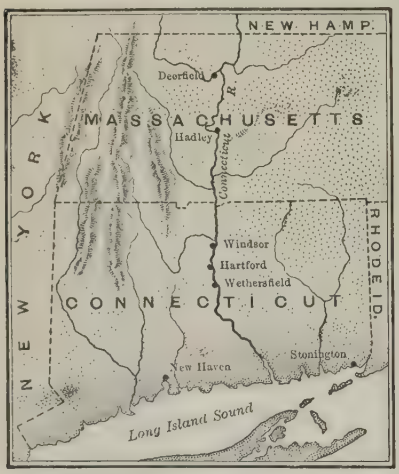
FIRST MEETING-HOUSE IN HARTFORD

Three years later the three towns formed a union and decided upon the laws that should govern them. These laws allowed every man to vote, whether he was a member of the church or not. There was one thing that would certainly have aroused the king's wrath if he had not been too busy to pay any attention to it, and this was that these laws did not even mention his Majesty. Evidently the Connecticut settlers thought that they could manage their own affairs without any help from the king.

Before the colonists were fairly settled in their new home, there was trouble with the Pequots. These Indians did not make any

Roger Williams helps the Puritans

general attack, but they would come as near the settlement as they dared, and seize one man or a small group of men and put them to death. Roger Williams learned that the Pequots were trying to persuade the Narragansetts to join them in making war upon the whites. He did not stop to remember how Massachusetts had treated him, but without a moment's delay he sent word to Governor Winthrop of the danger. He did much more than to send a message. He knew that the Pequots would try to persuade the Narragansetts to join them; and in wild, stormy weather he paddled his canoe across Narragansett Bay, and went straight to the wigwam of Canonicus. There stood the Pequot messengers, and Canonicus was on the point of yielding.



CONNECTICUT VALLEY SETTLEMENTS

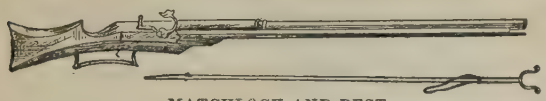
In the wigwam of Canonicus

They knew why Roger Williams had come. They glared at him angrily, and would have killed him if they had dared. Canonicus, too, would have killed any other man who had come so boldly into his wigwam; but he was very fond of Roger Williams, and he listened closely to what he had to say. It was several days before the chief would decide. Roger Williams talked, and the Pequots talked. When they lay down to sleep at night, the white man hardly expected to be alive in the morning. At last Canonicus told the Pequots that he would not unite with them.

The Pequots decided to make war without help, and all through the winter they put to death every colonist that they could seize.

Then Connecticut appealed to Massachusetts and Plymouth for help. Near where Stonington, Connecticut, now stands was a Pequot village. Around it was a stout palisade, or fence of tree trunks set close together in the ground. There were but two openings, and those were very narrow. The colonists closed them and threw lighted torches over the palisades. The wigwams blazed, and out of seven hundred Pequots only five escaped. For nearly forty years no Indians dared to attack the English.

The Pequot War



MATCHLOCK AND REST

One month after this terrible fight, New Haven was founded, in 1638. Hartford had been settled by men who thought the Bostonians were too strict. New Haven was settled by a company from England who feared that Boston was not strict enough. This company was made up chiefly of wealthy merchants; and just as the Reverend Thomas Hooker had led his church to Hartford, so the Reverend John Davenport led his church to New Haven. Boston would have been glad to have them stay in Massachusetts, but they had landed just after the banishment of Roger Williams, when Boston seemed to be full of new opinions, and religious matters were being discussed more freely than Davenport thought was right; and that is why he made his way through the forest to Connecticut. He paid the Indians ten coats for a piece of land on the coast, and there he founded New Haven.

Founding of New Haven

A NEW ENGLAND STOCKADE

From almost the first Connecticut had good schools, for these people were as eager as those in Massachusetts for the education

Education in Connecticut

of their children. In 1700 ten men from the different settlements came together to found a college. Each laid a few books on a table and said, "I give these books for the founding of a college in this colony." This little pile of books was the beginning of Yale College.

The Connecticut valley being fertile, there was plenty of food. The laws were strict, but no man was persecuted for thinking what he would on religious subjects. It was a quiet, happy, peaceful country, and later it was nicknamed "The Land of Steady Habits."

HOUSE WHERE YALE COLLEGE WAS FOUNDED
(It was the home of Rev. Samuel Russell, in Branford, Conn.)

When Massachusetts, Plymouth, and Maine were united as a royal province, the first governor was determined to seize the charter of Connecticut, and he went to Hartford with a company of soldiers to get possession of it. He and the Connecticut officials discussed the matter all one afternoon. The governor would not yield, and at last the charter was brought in and placed upon a table. It grew dark and candles were lighted. Then, tradition

The Charter Oak

says, the candles were suddenly put out, and when they were lighted again, no charter was to be seen. Long afterwards, Connecticut presented one Captain Wadsworth with a sum of money, saying that he had cared for the charter "in a very troublesome season." It is thought that he hid it in an oak-tree, and a tree in Hartford which fell half a century ago was often pointed out as the "Charter Oak" in which the charter was concealed.

SUMMARY.

Maine and New Hampshire. The kidnapping of Squanto aroused the interest of Sir Ferdinando Gorges in Maine.

Gorges and Mason made their first settlements at Pemaquid Point in Maine and Portsmouth in New Hampshire.

Massachusetts bought Maine from Gorges, and Maine, Massachusetts Bay, and Plymouth were united in one crown colony.

Rhode Island. Roger Williams, driven from Massachusetts, was befriended by the Indians. He founded Providence in 1636, and gave religious freedom to all who came. A company from Massachusetts settled Rhode Island, and Williams obtained a charter from the king.

Connecticut. Wethersfield, Windsor, and Hartford were settled from Massachusetts, in spite of the claims of the Dutch.

They were quiet, peaceful colonies, save for the war with the Pequots. They established schools and Yale College.

SUGGESTIONS FOR WRITTEN WORK.

Squanto tells Sir Ferdinand about his capture.

Describe Roger Williams's setting out into the forest.

Describe the Connecticut colonists traveling through the forest.

Describe the scene when Roger Williams entered the wigwam of Canonicus

IX

EARLY CUSTOMS OF NEW ENGLAND

When a settler comes to a new land, his first thought is to make some kind of shelter for himself. The first houses in New England were built of logs, for wood was plenty and easy to work. The chinks between the logs were filled with chips and clay. Glass was expensive, and in the earliest days oiled paper

The first houses in New England

was used for windows. Since wood was to be had for the cutting, the fireplaces were made large enough for the great logs that were brought in from the forest. There was plenty of heat, but so large a share of it went up the chimney that people cannot have been very comfortable, according to our ideas of comfort.

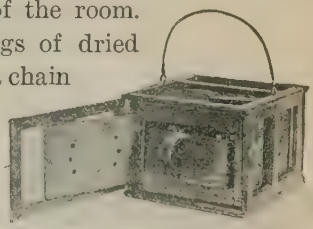
It was the custom to "bank up" the house for winter, that is, to pile up a bank of earth around it to keep out the cold. Stoves were not used until long after the Pilgrims came, and they cannot have been very good, for one writer of those days said that he could hardly keep his ink from freezing, even when it was close beside the stove. There was no way of heating the meeting-houses. Babies only a few days old were brought into these frigid buildings to be baptized with water in which the ice had to be broken. Women sometimes carried little foot-stoves, which cannot have given out much warmth; and there the people sat through the long sermons. They would have thought themselves exceedingly wicked if any discomfort had made them wish to go home.

AN EARLY SETTLER'S HOUSE

The kitchen

In the house the important place was the kitchen. There was the great fireplace with its iron crane, a long arm that stretched out over the fire and could be moved back and forth. "Pot-hooks" were hung to this, and from these hung kettles. Tin "bake-ovens," like small cupboards open at one side, were set up

before the fire, and in them were baked biscuit; or on hooks inside pieces of meat were fastened to roast. Strong hooks were fixed into the beams that ran across the top of the room. Poles were laid on these, and from them strings of dried apples or pumpkin were suspended. Sometimes a chain hung from these hooks in front of the fire and held a turkey or a chicken to be roasted before the blaze. "Brick ovens" were made after a while. They were little brick caverns beside the fireplaces. A fire was built in the oven, and when it was well heated the coals were raked out, and the beans and brown bread and chickens and pies and cakes were put in to cook.



A FOOT-STOVE

The early settlers had stools and benches, but few chairs. They ate from wooden "trenchers," or dishes made by hollowing out pieces of wood. Miles Standish bequeathed twelve of these trenchers in his will. A trencher generally served for two persons, and one large drinking cup was enough for a table. There were no forks, for they had hardly been introduced into England, but there were knives and wooden or pewter spoons. Pewter dishes were looked upon as elegance itself, and even the poorest housekeeper would not have dared to risk the scorn of her neighbors by leaving her pewter unscoured.

Furniture and dishes

NEW ENGLAND KITCHEN
(Showing crane, brick oven, and beams in the ceiling)

Bedrooms

The bedrooms were icy in the cold New England winters, and it is no wonder that every household had its long-handled warming-pan. This was filled with coals, the cover was shut down, and then the pan was drawn back and forth between the sheets. Beds and pillows were valuable articles, and even so great a man as the governor of a colony did not scorn to make a will that bequeathed his daughter a feather bed and a bolster.

The parlor

The parlor, or "best room," had no carpet until the later colonial days, but both it and the kitchen had "sanded" floors; that is, sand was thrown upon the boards, and sometimes so carefully as to make almost a regular pattern. As soon as the colonists became at all comfortable, every house must have a parlor, though it was rarely used except for weddings and funerals and the minister's calls. In the summer the parlor fireplace was filled with sprays of asparagus, or sometimes with laurel leaves.

TINDER BOX
(Showing curved steel, box for tinder, and candle in the cover)

In this parlor there was sure to be a corner cupboard, a buffet, sometimes with glass doors; and when the days of china came, the rare bits were displayed in the upper part, while in the closet below was often the "company cake" and the home-made wine. If a member of the family had died, there was a "mourning piece" on the wall. This was the picture of a gravestone whereon was written the person's name. A woman weeping usually bent over the stone, and a drooping willow filled one side of the picture, or canvas, for sometimes these "pieces" were worked on canvas with silk or worsted.

Home manufactures

The home of the colonist was a real manufactory. There were no "department stores" in those days, and few of the settlers had much ready money. Flax and wool were spun and woven and dyed and made into clothes, all in a man's own house. Stockings and mittens were knit by hand, and hats were made of home-braided straw. Soap was home-made. Butter and cheese

were always made at home. To be called a "good butter-hand" was a great honor. For lights, the first settlers had pine-knots. There was no tallow in the earliest days, so candles were made of the beautiful and sweet-smelling pale green bayberry wax.

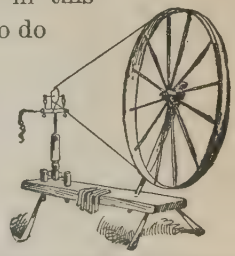
FLAX WHEEL

The Yankee jack-knife

The men bore their part in these home manufactures. In farming implements wood was used wherever it could be employed, and in the long evenings the jack-knives of the masculine part of the family were kept busy whittling out teeth for rakes, handles for hoes, reels for winding yarn, wooden spoons and dishes, tubs, pails, buckets, yokes, flails, snowshoes, skimmers, and handles for axes, and numberless other things. The men made the brooms, sometimes of birch twigs and sometimes of hemlock branches. A Yankee with his jack-knife could almost furnish a house and a barn.

Self-reliance of children

The children did their part of the work of the house. The girls helped their mother, and the boys helped their father. If the boys wished for playthings, they made them. If a boy must have a basket, he made it of birch bark; while for paint he used elderberry or pigeon berry juice. A boy who grew up in this way learned to depend upon himself, and to know what to do if he found himself in any difficulty.



WOOL SPINNING WHEEL

When the Revolutionary War broke out, these boys had become men who were not afraid to try to do things they had never done before. They knew little about military drill, but they could invent new ways of making their attacks, and they could capture forts in ways not laid down in the books. In some of the little hamlets away from city life, the old customs lingered far into this century. Many a man, not yet fifty years old, ate in his

Effect of this training

boyhood dinners that were cooked in a brick oven, prepared "quills," or pieces of the hollow elder stem, to be wound on the little "quilling wheel" with yarn for use in the shuttle of his mother's loom, and set off for college in a suit of his mother's spinning and weaving. These were the kind of boys who knew an unearned diploma was not worth the parchment it was written on, the kind of boys that the college and the country were proud to possess.

SUMMARY.

The New England colonists lived in log houses, cooked before open fires, had simple furniture and wooden or pewter dishes.

They manufactured most of their clothes, tools, and household utensils.

The children learned to be self-reliant, and their training showed in the Revolutionary War.

SUGGESTIONS FOR WRITTEN WORK.

Describe an evening in a colonial kitchen. Tell what each member of the family was doing.

Describe a cold day in a colonial house.

X

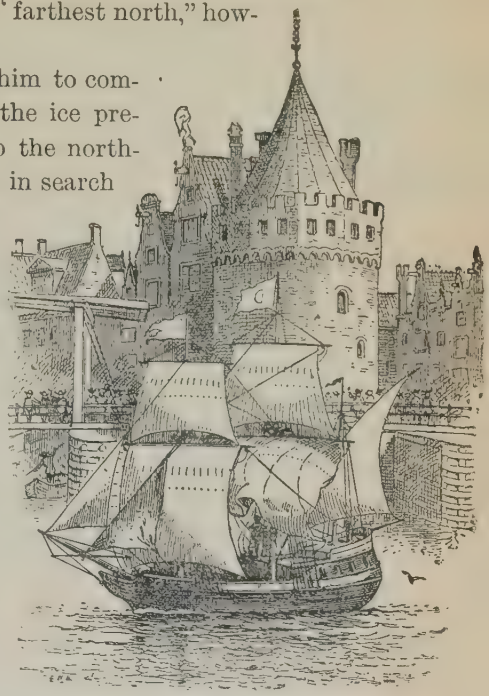
NEW YORK, DELAWARE, AND NEW JERSEY

Henry Hudson

About the time when the Pilgrims were planning to leave England and go to Holland, a company of English merchants were making ready to send a ship to search, not for a Northwest Passage, but for a Northeast. They thought there might be a way to sail north of Russia, and then south to eastern Asia. They chose for the captain of their vessel a friend of John Smith, a

brave English sailor named Henry Hudson. He set out on the voyage, but he had to come back and report that the ice kept him from going to Asia. He had been "farthest north," however, and he found himself famous.

A Dutch company then induced him to command one of their ships. Again the ice prevented him from sailing farther to the northeast, but he made up his mind to go in search of the Northwest Passage instead of returning to Holland. He had with him a letter from John Smith saying that he believed the Passage might be not far north of Chesapeake Bay. One bright September morning Hudson sailed into the mouth of the river that is named for him, though he spoke of it as the "River of Mountains." Up the stream went the little vessel, the Half-Moon, but the water was more and more fresh. Still he kept on, until just beyond where Albany now stands the stream began to grow shallow. This was no Northwest Passage.



THE HALF-MOON LEAVING AMSTERDAM
(Showing the Weepers' Tower, where mariners took leave of their friends)

Hudson made another voyage to Hudson Bay and Hudson Strait, this time for an English company. His crew rebelled, and finally turned him and a few others adrift in a small boat, and no one knows his fate.

Hudson's last voyage

Hudson had called the country about the "River of Mountains" "as fair a land as can be trodden by the foot of man"; but the Dutch were more interested in the thought that the

Dutch traders in America

North River — as they called the stream, since the Delaware was known as the South River — was convenient for the Indians to float down with canoes full of furs. Furs could be bought for beads, jack-knives, red cloth, and trinkets of various kinds, and could be sold in Europe at a high price. It is no wonder that Dutch traders hastened to send ships to America.

Beginnings of New York

There must be forts to protect the traders, and in 1614 a fort was built on Manhattan Island. That was the beginning of the city of New York. Another name for Holland was the Netherlands, or the lower lands; and the Dutch called their possessions in America New Netherland, just as John Smith called the land north of them New England, and the French named the land that they claimed New France. More forts were built, and one stood where Albany now is. One of the early writers called it "a miserable little fort, built of logs."

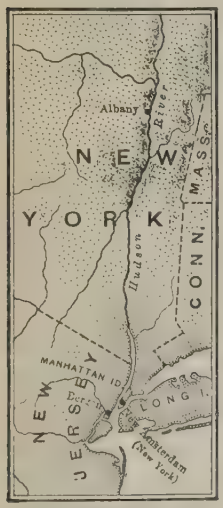
FIRST VIEW OF NEW AMSTERDAM
(Sketched by a Dutch officer in 1635)

Settlers on Manhattan Island

Even if the settlers were protected by "miserable little forts," many of them were making fortunes by trading in furs. This was a good thing for the traders, but the Dutch West India Company wished to have permanent settlements, and they began to think of sending colonists to the Hudson. The Indians were delighted to sell Manhattan Island for twenty-four dollars' worth of beads, brass buttons, ribbons, and red cloth. The settlement around the little fort was named New Amsterdam. The settlers lived in log houses, one story high, with roofs made of bark.

People came from most of the countries of Europe. To buy furs for beads and sell them for a generous amount of gold was an easy way to make a fortune, and after making a fortune, the next thing was to go back to Europe to spend it. The Company discussed the matter, and concluded that farmers who had been forbidden to deal in furs would be the best settlers. There was rich land all along the North River, but it paid so much better to trade in furs than to manage a farm that the Company knew they must make especially good offers to induce people to remain farmers. They formed a plan that was entirely different from anything that had been attempted in America.

DUTCH FLAG



SETTLEMENTS ABOUT THE HUDSON RIVER

Patroon system

Long before this time it had been the custom in various countries of Europe for one man to hold a large amount of land, and to allow other men to use such parts of it as he chose. These men must work for him so many days every year, and they could not leave one man's land to work for some one else. This custom had gone out of use in Europe, but the Dutch Company thought it might be introduced into America. They offered to give sixteen miles of the Hudson River shore with an indefinite amount of land behind it to any member of the Company who would bring fifty settlers to America.

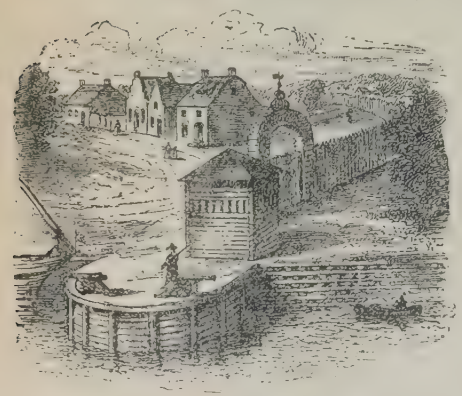
The owner of this land was called a patroon, or protector. He must clear the land, build houses and barns, and provide cattle and tools. He was to receive as rent a part of each crop. The colonists were to be free from paying taxes for ten years, but they must agree to remain on his land for

that time. The patroon held a court of his own, and had the right to punish any one who broke his laws. Indeed, he could do just about what he chose except to trade in furs. The Company would not give up that right to any one.

How New Netherland was governed

In the New England settlements most of the settlers had the same ideas of what was good for the colony, and were ready to give up their own wishes for the gain of all. It was not so in New Netherland. The Dutch had come to make money, and in their settlement, if a colonist was becoming rich, he did not care much what became of the colony. In Massachusetts, even after it became a royal province, every member of the church had a vote, but New Netherland was ruled by governors sent over by the Company.

Governor Stuyvesant, the last of these governors, was the best of them, for though he meant to have his own way, he was honest and kept the colony in order. Just as Virginia had demanded a House of Burgesses, so the people of New Netherland wished to elect a council of men to tell what their taxes should be, and to decide how the money should be spent. Stuyvesant finally yielded so far as to allow them to elect the council; but the councilors had no power, for he would pound on the floor with his wooden leg and tell them what was to be done — and it always was done.



WALL STREET PALISADE FROM THE EAST RIVER

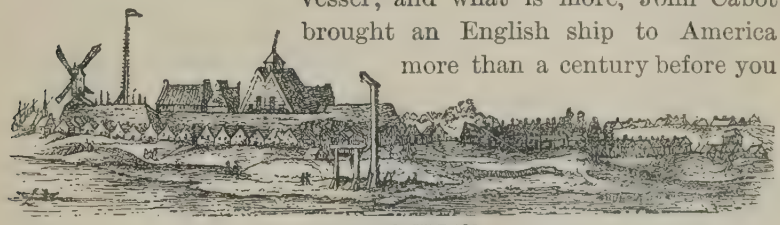
The Bowery and Wall Street

Governor Stuyvesant had in New Amsterdam a great farm, or bowery, as it was called in Dutch. The lane leading to it was Bowery Lane, and even now the street that is where the lane used to be is called the Bowery. Before New Amsterdam was

thirty years old, a war broke out between England and Holland; and lest the English should invade the Dutch city, Governor Stuyvesant built a stout wooden wall, twelve feet high, directly across the island. Where this wall ran is now called Wall Street.

The Dutch had good reason to fear being driven away by the English. Holland said, "We were first in the North River." England replied, "Yes, but an Englishman was captain of your vessel; and what is more, John Cabot brought an English ship to America more than a century before you came." "True," retorted the Dutch, "but if our captain was an Englishman, yours was an Italian. Moreover, it was your own Queen Elizabeth who said that discovery of a land is nothing; it is colonizing that gives a right to the country. We have had men here almost ever since Hudson's voyage was made, and the land is ours." But the English said, "King James granted this land to the London and the Plymouth Companies before Hudson crossed the ocean. If Dutchmen come here to settle, we are willing; but they are on our land, and they are subjects of our king."

Dutch and English claims to New Netherland

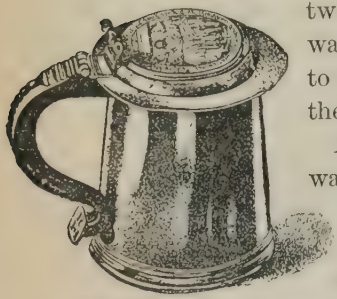


NEW AMSTERDAM
(From a Dutch map published in 1656)

The matter was dropped for a time because the English king and his people did not get along very well together and were too busy with their own quarrels to give much time to American affairs. England left the Dutch in peace for a while, but trouble was arising from another direction, and they could not make butter and cheese and smoke their pipes in quiet very long. The king of Sweden had been eager to found a colony in America that

Swedes in Delaware

should be open to all Protestants. He died before this could be done, but in 1638 a company of "strong, industrious people" sailed from Sweden to the Delaware River — or South River, as the Dutch called it. Up the wide, beautiful stream they went until they were where Wilmington now stands. There they built a fort and named it Fort Christiana in honor of the little girl, twelve years old, who had become their queen. She was much interested in the colony, and was glad to have her father's plan carried out. This was the beginning of the settlement of Delaware.



DUTCH TANKARD
(Given to the first white girl born in New Netherland, on her marriage)

After a few years, a governor named Printz was sent to rule the colony. He did not mean that any craft should sail up the Delaware River against his will; and when a vessel entered the stream, the sailors must anchor and go on for six leagues in small boats to ask if the governor would allow them to bring up the ship. If his permission was not asked, he would fire upon the vessel, no matter to what nation it belonged.

This was very annoying to the Dutch, for they had a little settlement farther up the Delaware, opposite where Philadelphia now stands, and to be obliged to ask the permission of a Swede whenever they wished to sail up to their own people was rather hard. They said dolefully that the Swedish fort was "extremely well supplied with cannons and men."

DUTCH FLINTLOCK PISTOL

The Dutch capture New Sweden

After a while the time came when Sweden was too busy making war in Europe to defend her colony on the Delaware. The hot-headed Governor Stuyvesant had borne about as much as he cared to bear, and Governor Printz was greatly surprised one morning to see seven Dutch ships come sailing up his river without ask-

ing his permission. There were more men on board, armed and ready to fight, than there were in all the little Swedish settlement, and Governor Printz had to surrender. So it was that the Dutch became masters not only of New Netherland, but of New Sweden. In 1617, only three years after they built their fort on Manhattan Island, they built one where Bergen stands, and this was the first settlement in New Jersey.

New Jersey settled

So far, the Dutch had had matters their own way. They had taken as much land as they chose, and had conquered the Swedes who would not live under their rule, but now trouble was coming upon them. An English fleet sailed into Massachusetts Bay, and the Dutchmen of New Amsterdam were greatly alarmed, but Holland sent a message, "There is nothing to fear. They have only come to oblige Massachusetts to admit the Episcopal Church." There were some Dutch warships lying off New Amsterdam, but when this dispatch came, Governor Stuyvesant allowed them to sail. The Dutch had made a treaty with the Iroquois, the chief tribe of Indians in that part of the country, but some other red men were making trouble, and the governor and most of his troops had gone up the Hudson to quiet them. One hot August day a messenger dashed into the camp. "The English ships!" he cried. "They have left Boston, and they are coming to Manhattan!"

THE STRAND, NOW WHITEHALL STREET, NEW YORK, IN 1673

(The house at the head of the wharf was the first brick house built in the town)

Trouble for the Dutch

Governor Stuyvesant hurried to Manhattan, and the next day

England claims New Amsterdam

the men-of-war appeared. There were one thousand soldiers on board, and there were six times as many guns as Fort Amsterdam could show. Governor Winthrop came ashore and made it clear to Governor Stuyvesant that the land had been granted to the Massachusetts Bay Company, and must be surrendered. Stuyvesant would not yield, and at last Winthrop presented a letter from the English commander, Richard Nicolls, whom the king had appointed governor of the territory, and went back to the ship. This letter promised that the Dutch might plant as many colonies as they chose and have all the privileges of English colonists, if they would surrender Manhattan.

Nicolls's letter

STUYVESANT TEARS UP NICOLLS'S LETTER

"Let us read it to the people," said the councilors.

"I won't," roared Governor Stuyvesant, thumping on the floor with his wooden leg; and straightway he tore the letter into bits.

The people heard what he had done, and they demanded to hear the letter. One of the councilors put the pieces together and read it to them.

"The West India Company has done little for us," said one.

"Why should we lose our homes and our lives to hold the land for them?" demanded another.

"We cannot hold the land if we would," declared a third.

"We have twenty guns and two hundred and fifty men; they have one hundred and twenty guns and one thousand men."

Still Stuyvesant would not yield. The ships sailed into the North River, and the governor marched up the road at the head of his men to prevent the troops from landing. The citizens begged him not to fire. Women and children crowded around him and pleaded with him not to bring war upon them. He yielded, but he said, "I'd rather be carried to my grave." So it came about that New Amsterdam was no longer a Dutch town. It lost even its name, for the English king gave the territory to his brother, the Duke of York, and in 1664 New Amsterdam became New York. New York

A COMPANION OF GOVERNOR NICOLLS
(Showing the costume of the period)

Nicolls remained as governor. He was a just, kind-hearted man, always ready to please the people. When he was obliged to go back to England, the New Yorkers were as sorry as if they themselves had chosen him for their governor. Honest, positive old Governor Stuyvesant and this gentle, courteous Governor Nicolls became warm friends. Stuyvesant lived on his "bowery" on the East River, and the man whom he would have fought to the death was one of his most welcome guests.

Governor Nicolls was much pleased with the northern part of what is now New Jersey. He sent a colony there when he had been in New York only a few months, but before the colonists were fairly settled, he learned that the Duke of York had given away the land to two noblemen, Lord Berkeley and Sir George Carteret. "Hold on to your homes," said Governor Nicolls. "I am going to England, and I will beg the duke not to give up the land." New Jersey is given away

The visit was of no use, and one day in 1664 an English vessel appeared in the harbor. The colonists stood in a group on the

Philip Carteret

river bank, not knowing whether they would be treated kindly or driven harshly away from their settlement. A small boat was rowed to the landing, and a young man sprang ashore. Tradition says that he had a hoe on his shoulder. He introduced himself as Philip Carteret, a cousin of Sir George, and made a cordial little speech to the settlers, saying that he was glad to find them there, and he hoped they would stay. He told them how much land he would give them, and promised that every man might worship God as he thought right.

STUYVESANT'S BOWERY HOUSE

The colonists liked the young man. They had built four "clapboarded houses," and, crowded as they were, room was made for Philip and his men. This is the way in which the town of Elizabeth was begun. The name was that of Sir George's wife. New Jersey's name came from the island of Jersey, of which Sir George Carteret had once been governor.

The Quakers buy New Jersey

Not many years passed before Lord Berkeley sold his share of New Jersey to the Quakers. Some time afterwards they purchased the share of the Carterets also. In 1702 East and West Jersey were united and became a royal colony.

SUMMARY.

Henry Hudson, sailing for a Dutch company, discovered the Hudson River.

New York was first settled by the Dutch fur traders, and was called New Amsterdam. Patroons received large estates along the Hudson.

England claimed the land because of Cabot's voyage, seized it, and gave to both city and province the name New York.

Delaware was settled by the Swedes, and afterwards was seized in turn by the Dutch and the English.

New Jersey was settled by the Dutch, then by colonists under Carteret and Berkeley, then by Quakers. Finally it became a royal colony.

SUGGESTIONS FOR WRITTEN WORK.

Stuyvesant describes the surrender of New Amsterdam.

A patroon tries to persuade a man to come to America.

A talk between Governor Printz and some sailors who wished to go up the Delaware.

XI

PENNSYLVANIA AND MARYLAND

PENNSYLVANIA.

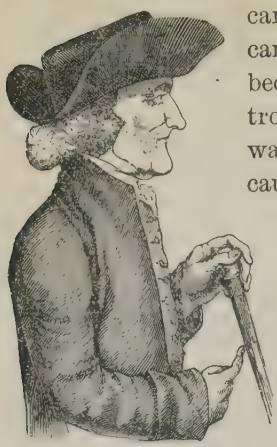
WILLIAM PENN
(When twenty-two years old)

The boy William Penn

SETTLEMENTS had already been made in New England, New York, and Delaware when the boy was born who was to hold more land in America than any other man had ever received. His name was William Penn, and he was the son of an admiral of the British navy. When the boy grew older, he was very handsome. He was an excellent scholar, and spoke five or six languages. He was fond of out-of-door sports, rode well, danced well, was a good swordsman, and a favorite wherever he went.

Admiral Penn was exceedingly proud of his brilliant son. He

sent him to Oxford University, and made many plans for his career after he had graduated. By and by news came to the admiral that the young man had become a Quaker, and that he was getting into trouble at the University because he thought it was wrong to attend the church service and because he persisted in saying *thee* and *thou* instead of *you*. The Quakers, or Friends, did not think it right to speak to one person as *you*, since *you* is a plural pronoun, although by most people it was thought as impertinent to say *thou* to an older person as it would be to-day to call him by his first name.



A QUAKER[1]
(The Quakers refused to remove their hats in deference to any one)

The admiral was angry and disappointed. One thing that seemed especially shocking to him was his son's refusal to take off his hat, even to the king. The king himself was not at all annoyed. He thought this whim of young Penn's, as he called it, was very amusing, and when the handsome young man stood before him, hat on head, the king took off his own hat. "Friend Charles," asked the Quaker, "why dost thou take off thy hat?" "Wherever I go," answered the king, with a sly twinkle in his eye, "it is the custom for only one man to wear a hat." William Penn liked a jest as well as any one, and he must have been amused at this speech, but he continued to wear his hat.

Penn will not remove his hat to the king

In some important matters the Friends were wiser than the rest of the world; for instance, in England a man might be hanged for stealing a loaf of bread, but the Friends believed that it was far better to punish him in some other way than by taking his life. In those days most people thought that insane persons could be cured by beating and starving, but Penn believed in

Advanced ideas of the Quakers

[1] From a portrait of Nicholas Waln in Watson's *Annals of Philadelphia*.

having hospitals for them and treating them kindly. He thought no one should be imprisoned for debt; and, so far as is known, he was the first man in the world to declare that criminals ought to have work provided for them when they were imprisoned, and not spend their time in idleness and in learning more of evil from the other prisoners. Another idea of his, which was then almost unheard of, was that nations, instead of going to war when they disagreed, should let their rulers meet and act as a council to settle any dispute. It is probable that many who were opposed to the Quakers did not think so much of the difference of belief in important affairs as of what seem to us very small matters, such as refusing to take off the hat, and saying *thee* and *thou*.

Penn's own ideas

There were Quakers in New Jersey, and for some time Penn thought of founding a settlement in America where his people could live in peace and not be fined or beaten or imprisoned. Charles II. owed Admiral Penn a large sum of money, and when the admiral died, William Penn offered to accept instead of the money a tract of land in America. The king was glad enough to escape from paying the debt. He thought it very amusing that this young Quaker would take wild forest land instead of such a sum of money, and it may be that there was a touch of humor in the name which he gave it, "Pennsylvania," or "Penn's Woodland," though he declared that the name was given in honor of the admiral. More amusing still did it seem to the merry King Charles to send Quakers, who did not believe in fighting, off among the savages.

CHARLES II.

"We shall have no fighting," said Penn, "we shall pay the Indians for the land."

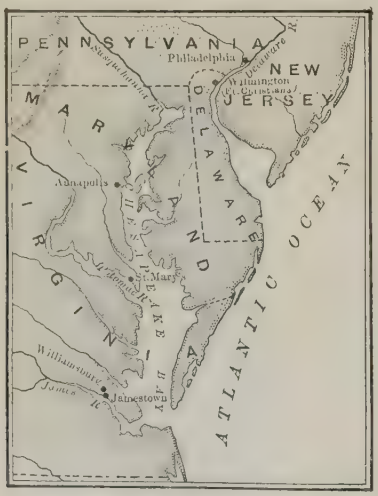
"I thought the land was mine," said the king. "Did n't our ships discover it?"

"If some Indians should come over here and discover England, would the country be theirs?" asked Penn.

"Oh good-by, good-by," said the king; "but see to it that you don't take to scalping."

There were to be just laws in Penn's colony and religious freedom. Ship after ship sailed up the Delaware, full of colonists; three thousand came during the first year. Penn planned his city with wide, straight streets, and gave them the names of forest trees. Some of these names have been changed, but there are still Chestnut, Walnut, Spruce, Pine, and others. The settlers at first lived not *on* the river bank, but *in* it, for they dug into the bluff from the side and top, spread turf and branches over the cave for a roof, and were not at all uncomfortable. So it was that Philadelphia was begun in 1682. The name means the "city of brotherly love," and Penn intended that people of different beliefs should have an opportunity to live there in peace. In a few weeks he asked the settlers to meet him, and together they made laws for the colony.

Philadelphia founded



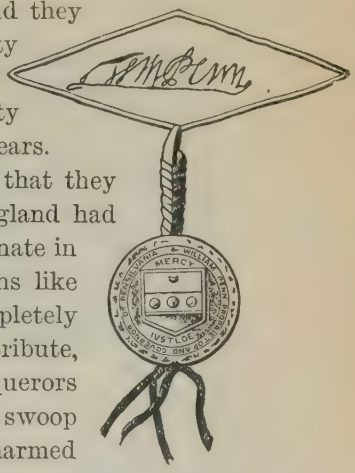
THE MIDDLE COLONIES

Soon after Penn's arrival the famous treaty with the Indians was made. Penn feasted them, and they feasted him They ran

and leaped to show what they could do. The governor watched a little while, then he showed what he could do. When they saw that he could leap as far and run as fast as they, they were convinced that he was really a mighty man, and they gladly made a treaty with him. The treaty made by the Pilgrims with Massasoit was kept for more than fifty years, but this famous treaty of Penn's was faithfully observed for sixty years.

Penn's treaty with the Indians

The Quakers paid the red men for the land that they took, as the whites in New York and New England had done; but the Quakers were especially fortunate in having around them, not fierce, warlike Indians like those of the east, but tribes that had been completely subdued by the fierce Iroquois, made to pay tribute, and to call themselves cowards. Their conquerors were friendly to the whites, and were ready to swoop down upon the Indians of Pennsylvania if they harmed the Quakers.[1]



PENN'S AUTOGRAPH AND SEAL

This was what gave Penn safety. But he had more than safety: he had the friendship of the red men, and this he won chiefly because he was one of the few white men who treated them not as inferiors, but as equals, and because he was careful to do by them as he would have liked them to do by him. Penn stayed two years in America. He lived at first in a small cottage, now in Fairmount Park, Philadelphia, the bricks for which were brought from England. He was finally obliged to return to England, and visited his "Woodland" but once more.

The city grew. Schools were opened when it was only one year old, and — a new thing in those days — they were for girls as well as boys. Children could be taught to read for four shillings a term, and for eight shillings they could learn reading,

Education among Quakers and Puritans

[1] Fiske's *Dutch and Quaker Colonies in America.*

writing, and arithmetic. The Quaker belief in regard to education was quite different from that of the Puritans. Both were eager to understand the Bible aright. The Puritans thought that the more of a student a man was, the better chance he would have of knowing just what every verse in the Bible meant. That is why the Puritans were so anxious to found a college. The Quakers thought that if one simply learned to read, God would put into his heart the meaning of what was said in the Bible. That is why they did not think it was necessary to have a college, although they wished their children to have a common school education.

PENN'S BRICK COTTAGE
(Formerly standing on the west side of Letitia Street)

Growth of the city

Philadelphia grew rapidly and soon became the largest city in the colonies, retaining that distinction for many years. Two years after Penn's arrival the first printing press in the middle colonies was established in Philadelphia. There, too, was published the first daily paper in the United States.

MARYLAND.

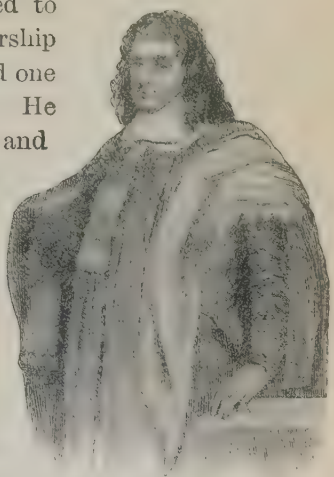
English persecution of Roman Catholics

Maryland is a kind of link between the northern colonies and those farther south. It was first settled in 1634, the very year in which Roger Williams was having so hard a time in Massachusetts. The Roman Catholics in England were meeting even greater troubles than his. If they refused to attend the Episcopal Church, they were fined or imprisoned, or even tortured. Not a word could they say about making the laws of the land, and they

could not even send their children away to school in Roman Catholic countries. The queen was a Roman Catholic, but, strangely enough, this fact only made life in England harder for the members of her church. In order to marry her, Charles had promised that the laws against those of her faith should not be carried out. He had no power to bring this to pass, and while the Roman Catholics were indignant that he did not succeed, the Protestants were angry that he even made an attempt, and they watched closely to make sure that the laws were enforced.

Lord Baltimore plans a colony

In England there was a wise, clear-sighted nobleman called Lord Baltimore. He had been a member of Parliament, and he was a friend of King Charles. This nobleman had become a Roman Catholic, and just as the Puritans wished to found a colony where they could be free to worship as they would, so Lord Baltimore wished to found one where Roman Catholics could have their church. He asked the king for some land north of Virginia, and Charles was more than ready to grant the request. This gift would please the Roman Catholics, the Protestants would not object to their opponents leaving the country, and the only ones displeased would be the colonists in Virginia, who were too far away to make any trouble.



CECILIUS CALVERT, SECOND LORD BALTIMORE

Lord Baltimore could appoint his own judges, have his own form of worship, and make very nearly what laws he chose. The only claim that King Charles made upon the proprietor was that one fifth of all gold and silver mined should belong to the crown, and that two Indian arrows should be presented to him every year, to show that the land was under the English rule. The queen's name was Henrietta Maria, and in her honor the tract was to be called Maryland.

The independence of Maryland

St. Mary's is founded

Just as the papers for this grant were to be made out, Lord Baltimore died, but his son went on with the plan, and carried out his father's ideas. Soon three hundred colonists went to Maryland. A few were rich, and all were well supplied with what would be needed in a new country. Some were Roman Catholics, but many were Protestants, for it was known that men were to attend whatever church they chose. The emigrants came to land on the western shore of Chesapeake Bay. The ship was the largest that the Indians had ever seen, and they sent messengers about to say, "A canoe as large as an island has brought as many men as there are trees in the woods." "Where did a tree grow that was large enough to make it of?" they asked, for they thought it was made of a single trunk like a dug-out. For "axes, hatchets, hoes, and some yards of cloth," the chief sold the whites a piece of land at the mouth of the Potomac, and there in 1634 was founded Saint Mary's, the first settlement in Maryland. Some wigwams were on this land, and in one of these was held the first Roman Catholic service in that part of the world. This Indian hut is sometimes spoken of as the "Wigwam Church."

A BALTIMORE SIXPENCE
(Issued by Lord Baltimore in 1662)

The governor called the colonists to a meeting, and together they made laws for the settlement. The most famous one of these laws declared that no one who believed in Jesus Christ should be interfered with in his worship. Rhode Island was not founded till two years later, so such liberality was something entirely new in America, and it was almost unknown in Europe. Roman Catholics came to the colony, of course, and Quakers came; and finally some Puritans came who had not been happy in Virginia, and they founded Annapolis.

Religious freedom

The great business of Maryland was raising tobacco. This

DOUGHOREGAN MANOR IN MARYLAND

work paid so well that people did little else; and while the New Englanders were spinning and weaving and sawing and whittling, the people of Maryland were rolling their hogsheads of tobacco to the wharves, and sending them to England to buy whatever they needed to wear and to use in their houses. With whole forests at hand, the Marylanders made nothing for themselves, but sent the wood to England to be manufactured into tables, stools, bowls, and brooms, and brought back to them.

Why Maryland had no manufactures

People living on large plantations cannot have their houses near together, and this is the chief reason why there were so few towns in Maryland even after many settlers had come. Each plantation, however, was like a little town in itself. There were wide fields of tobacco all around, cabins for the workmen, a chapel, storehouses, and in the centre of all the great, comfortable house of the owner of the plantation. In these rather lonely places, the people at the "great house" were always glad to welcome guests. The homes of the planters "are free for all to come and go," said one who knew them well.

Reason for the lack of towns

Puritan rebellion

In a short time there were troubles in Maryland, which arose chiefly because the Virginians did not wish to have a colony so near. Some years later a rebellion broke out among the Puritans against the governor. They were especially ungrateful because, as was said, Lord Baltimore had given them the same rights that he had given to the people of his own church. The Puritans were in power in England, and the man who was then Lord Baltimore was declared to have no claim upon Maryland.

Changes of government

A few years later his rights were restored, and for thirty years every man went to church where he pleased. Then the king took the government into his own hands, and the Roman Catholics were obliged to pay forty pounds of tobacco apiece every year to help support the Episcopal Church. Finally a Protestant descendant of the founder was appointed governor, and his family held the province until the Revolution.

SUMMARY.

The Quaker, William Penn, obtained a grant of land in America and founded Philadelphia. People of all kinds of belief came to enjoy religious freedom. The city soon became the largest in the colonies.

Maryland was founded by Lord Baltimore as a place of refuge for Roman Catholics who were persecuted in England.

Religious freedom was given to all who chose to come.

Maryland had few manufactures because tobacco-raising paid so well that people bought whatever was needed, and few towns because each man wished to have a large plantation for raising tobacco.

SUGGESTIONS FOR WRITTEN WORK.

A Quaker boy describes his cave in the banks of the Delaware.

Penn tells the Indians of his wish to be on good terms with them.

One Indian tells another about the coming of the great ship.

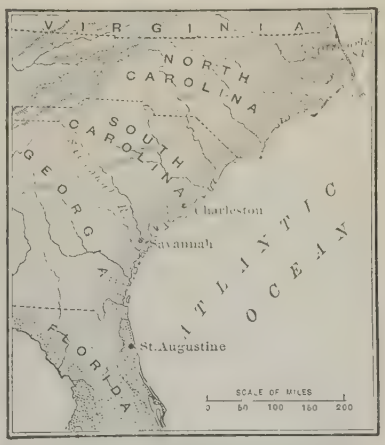
XII

THE CAROLINAS AND GEORGIA

NORTH AND SOUTH CAROLINA.

The father of Charles II. treated his people so badly that finally he was tried and put to death. For eleven years there was no king in England, and then Charles II. was set upon the throne. The men who had helped him to secure his father's crown expected to be rewarded, but Charles preferred to spend his money in amusing himself. The cheapest thing to do was to give them some land in America, and this he did. To a company of eight he gave the land between Virginia and Saint Augustine. Like the other grants, this territory was to extend to the west as far as the Pacific.

The grant of the Carolinas



MAP OF THE CAROLINAS AND GEORGIA

Carolina was not all wilderness, for a few farmers had come from Virginia and settled near Albemarle Sound, not far from Roanoke Island, where Raleigh had tried to begin his "second home" for the English nation. In 1663 the Company gave the little group of houses the name of Albemarle. This was the first permanent settlement in North Carolina.

Albemarle

The first settlement in South Carolina was made in 1670, near

Charleston

where Charleston now stands, by English emigrants whom the Company sent over. Just as Jamestown had been named in honor of King James, so this settlement was named in honor of King Charles II.

The Huguenots

South Carolina was especially fortunate in the Huguenot, or French Protestant, emigrants who came to the new colony in the early days. The king of France declared that they should not have a church of their own in France, and that if they tried to emigrate, they should be hanged. Those who came to America had to steal away by night and abandon their homes and other property, but when they reached the New World, every colony had a welcome for them. Massachusetts gladly gave them land and money. They were valuable colonists, for they understood various kinds of manufactures, and, more than that, they were brave, upright, intelligent people, a prize for any nation.

In England a learned man named John Locke wrote a body of laws for Carolina. There were laws for everything that could be thought of from the punishment of crimes to the oversight of children's games. There was to be a certain number of noblemen, each owning a certain amount of land. There were also to be tenants, who rented land, but could never buy it. They must do whatever the nobleman bade, and they must not leave his land without permission. The Company were so delighted with this body of laws that they called it the "Grand Model," and declared that it would stand forever. In reality, it never stood

ENTRANCE TO CHARLESTON HARBOR

The Grand Model

at all, for the settlers refused to be ruled in any such fashion, and insisted upon buying land and making laws for themselves.

North Carolina had vast forests of pines, and the chief occupation of the colonists was cutting timber and making tar and turpentine. South Carolina had great tracts of swampy land, and as soon as it was found that rice would grow on it, the raising of rice became the principal work. Long before the Revolutionary War, it was discovered that indigo would flourish in South Carolina, and that paid so well that indigo raising then became the leading industry. It was not easy for white people to work in the swamps, and negro slaves were brought from Africa. The occupations of the two parts of Carolina were so unlike and the first settlements so far apart, that what one portion of the country wanted was often quite different from what the other required. The result of this was that the territory was finally divided into two parts, North and South Carolina.

The chief industries

RICE

Division of the Carolinas

GEORGIA.

There used to be a law in England that men who could not pay their debts should be put into prison. In prison they must stay unless some one paid for them, for there they had no way of earning money. Indeed, they had little food unless their friends gave it to them or they could beg it from those who passed by. Many of these "poor debtors" were honest men who had run in debt because of sickness. Some were even well educated.

GENERAL JAMES OGLETHORPE
(From a print in the British Museum)

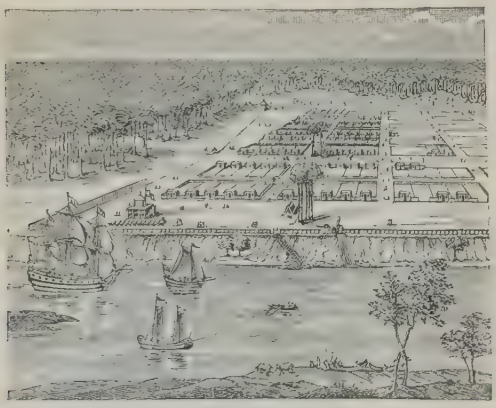
Poor debtors

Oglethorpe plans to help them

The prisons of England were in a wretched condition, and Parliament appointed General James Oglethorpe to visit them and report what reforms ought to be made. General Oglethorpe was a kind-hearted man, and after he had seen the sufferings of these people, he could not rest until he had planned some way to relieve them. This is what he planned. He would pay their debts, set them free, and then carry them and their families to America, and give them a chance to try again.

Why he chose Georgia

Many rich men helped, the English government helped, and it was only a year before a ship set sail with more than one hundred liberated prisoners and their families on board as emigrants. They were to form a settlement between Charleston and Saint Augustine, for Oglethorpe was a good general as well as a kind, generous man, and he knew that Charleston would welcome a strong settlement to the south as a protection against the Spaniards, and that the two colonies could stand more firmly together than either alone. The tract of land given to him "in trust for the poor" was called Georgia, for then King George II. was on the throne.



SAVANNAH IN 1741

The first settlement was made at Savannah in 1733. Not many years before this time,

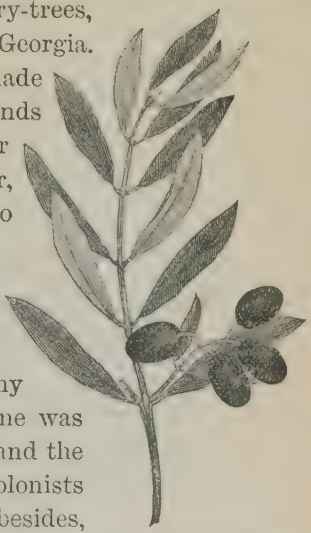
The settlement of Georgia

the Spaniards of Florida had aroused the Indians to attack South Carolina, and that colony was delighted to have these new neighbors and allies. She gave them cattle, goats, hogs, and rice, besides sending some negroes with them to help build the houses. South

Carolina was not disappointed in the help that she expected to receive from the new colony, for General Oglethorpe led an expedition against the Spaniards, and after that there was no trouble from them.

Silk-raising

Oglethorpe had expected to be able to make wine and olive oil, and to produce large quantities of silk, for mulberry-trees, on whose leaves the silkworms feed, grew wild in Georgia. When the colony was two years old, the founder made a visit to England, and carried with him eight pounds of Georgia silk, which was made into a dress for the queen. Silk-raising was not a success, however, one reason being that the raising of rice and indigo paid much better.



BRANCH OF OLIVE

Oglethorpe and his friends were to make the laws for the colonies for twenty-one years; but after a little while the settlers were not contented to be ruled by others. There were two reasons why they felt that they had a right to complain. One was that no rum could be brought into the colony, and the second was that slavery was not allowed. The colonists said that men needed rum in that climate, and that besides, they ought to have it to sell to the West Indies. The climate, it was maintained, required the use of negroes, for the settlers said they must have workmen who could endure the heat better than white men.

Georgia is given up to the king

The founder and his friends finally granted their requests. Twenty years after the colony was founded, the province was given up to the king, and until the Revolution it was ruled by a governor whom he appointed. Georgia was the last of the thirteen English colonies that united, only a century and a half after the first one was founded, to free themselves from Great Britain.

SUMMARY.

The Carolinas were granted to several men as a reward for serving the king. Among their most valuable colonists were the Huguenots.

The chief industry in the northern part was the manufacture of tar and turpentine; in the southern, the raising of rice and indigo. The wants of the two colonies were so unlike that the province was finally divided.

General Oglethorpe founded Georgia as a home for "poor debtors."

The settlers were not satisfied with the government of the colony, and at last it was given up to the king.

SUGGESTIONS FOR WRITTEN WORK.

General Oglethorpe tells Parliament about the "poor debtors."

One of the prisoners writes his wife about Oglethorpe's offer.

XIII

THE FRENCH EXPLORATIONS IN AMERICA

CHAMPLAIN'S PICTURE OF QUEBEC IN 1613

A FEW years before Jamestown was settled, there was in France a brave young sailor who had become a soldier for the time, and was helping to fight some of the French king's battles. His name was Champlain, and he would have been much surprised if any one had told him that some day a lake in America would be named after him.

When the fighting was over, he asked the king's permission to go to America to search for the Northwest Passage. He explored the Saint Lawrence, and on its north shore he noted a rocky pro-

montory. "That is the very place for a town," he thought. "The river is narrow here, and a fort with a few men could keep any number of ships from coming up the stream." In 1608 he founded a colony on that very spot, and named it Quebec from the Indian word *quebec*, a narrow place. The founding of Quebec

The Iroquois, the fiercest and most savage of all the Indian tribes, lived in what is now the State of New York, and one day the friendly Indians who were north of the Saint Lawrence came to Champlain to beg for his aid against these Iroquois, who were their deadly foes. Champlain agreed to help them. The white men and the red men feasted and smoked and made speeches. Then they paddled up the river and into Lake Champlain. If they had been one month later and had gone a little farther south, they might have met Henry Hudson and his Dutchmen sailing up the Hudson. All the men that they thought of meeting were the Iroquois, and soon the Iroquois came. Champlain's guns won the day, and there was no limit to the devotion of the Indians. To show their affection and gratitude, they gave him the bleeding head of one of their enemies and asked him to present it to his sovereign. This little battle between a few red men in the woods with some white men helping one side was an important event in American history, for ever after this the Iroquois hated the French and were ready to help the English. That is why the French did not venture to found any colonies in New York, although they

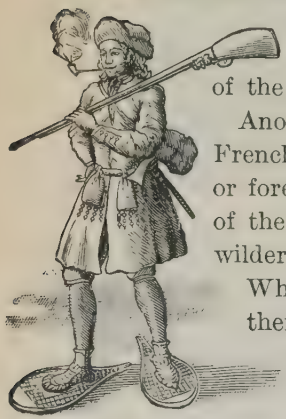
A JESUIT EXPLORER

Champlain and the Iroquois

explored to the westward, up the Saint Lawrence and about the Great Lakes. They claimed all the land that is drained by the river, and called it New France.

The Jesuits

The first explorers were Roman Catholic priests called Jesuits. Champlain said that he would rather convert an Indian than found an empire, and this was the spirit of these priests. Among the hostile Indians they suffered fearful tortures. They were beaten, they were burned, their fingers were cut off with shells joint by joint, and they were put to death in all the agonizing ways that could be invented. Still, even after the Dutch had ransomed one and sent him home, he made his way back again to preach to his tormentors. One Jesuit, when pursued by Iroquois, might easily have made his escape, but hastened back to terrible sufferings because he remembered that some of his Indian converts had not yet been baptized. In all the history of America, there are no heroes more brave, more earnest, and more unselfish than these black-robed missionaries of the wilderness.



A COUREUR DE BOIS

Another class of people who did much to bring the French and the Indians together were the *coureurs de bois*, or forest rangers. The king's officers demanded so much of the profit on furs that many young men went into the wilderness and traded without the royal permission. Whenever one was caught, he was severely punished; therefore, they went farther and farther away from the settlements. Often they married Indian women. Nearly all the English looked down upon the Indians, but the French treated them as equals, and could go among them in safety far from any settlement of whites.

After a while the French heard that beyond their forts and missions there was a great river which the Indians called the Mississippi, or "father of waters." Marquette, a Jesuit priest

was eager to go down this stream to preach to new tribes of Indians, and Joliet, a fur-trader, was ready to go with him. The friendly Indians begged them not to go. They said that the distant tribes were fierce and cruel, and that the river was full of "monsters that devour both men and canoes." Nevertheless, the priest and the explorer and five of their friends floated down the Wisconsin and into the Mississippi. The Indians met them kindly, and one tribe, the Illinois, begged that the white men would come back and live among them. They went below the mouth of the Arkansas, far enough to be almost sure that the great river did not flow into the Gulf of California, as had been thought, and then they paddled their way back up the Mississippi.

Marquette and Joliet go down the Mississippi

MARQUETTE
(From the statue in the Capitol at Washington)

Marquette was exhausted by the hard journey, but as soon as he was strong enough he went to visit the Illinois. He preached to them and founded a mission. On his way back to the Great Lakes, he died on the bank of the river that is named for him.

To find where the Mississippi emptied was the work of La Salle, another brave French explorer. Nothing could make this resolute man falter. He built a sailing vessel; it was wrecked. A French ship bringing him money was lost. He built a fort; the garrison revolted. He made friends of the Illinois; but when he came to their village a second time, it had been burned, and the heads of his Indian allies were put up on poles. Three times he started on his expedition; twice he failed. The third time, in the bitterly cold winter of 1682, he came to the Mississippi. It was full of floating ice, but the dauntless man never thought of giving up the voyage. Down the stream he made his way. At the mouth of the river he set up a great wooden cross, on which

La Salle reaches the mouth of the Mississippi

Louisiana

he nailed the arms of France, and took possession in the name of King Louis XIV. of all the land drained by the Mississippi and its branches. In honor of the king, he named the territory Louisiana.

SETTLEMENT AT THE MOUTH OF THE MISSISSIPPI IN 1718

He knew that it was of little use to claim the land unless he planted colonies and built forts. The king gave him four ships that he might found a colony at the mouth of the Mississippi, but the pilot made a mistake and sailed to the coast of Texas. There they built a fort, but many of the men died and the rest quarreled.

Death of La Salle

Finally, La Salle set out for Canada to find help. On the way he was shot by one of his own men. So died one of the bravest and most resolute of all the explorers of the New World.

SUMMARY.

Champlain explored the Saint Lawrence and founded Quebec; therefore France claimed Canada.

He sided with the Canadian Indians against the Iroquois; and, because of their enmity, although the French planted colonies to the west, they founded none in New York.

Marquette, Joliet, and La Salle explored the Mississippi; therefore France claimed the land drained by that river. She named it Louisiana.

SUGGESTIONS FOR WRITTEN WORK.

A Jesuit tells his friends about his life in America.

An Indian tells Marquette about the Mississippi.

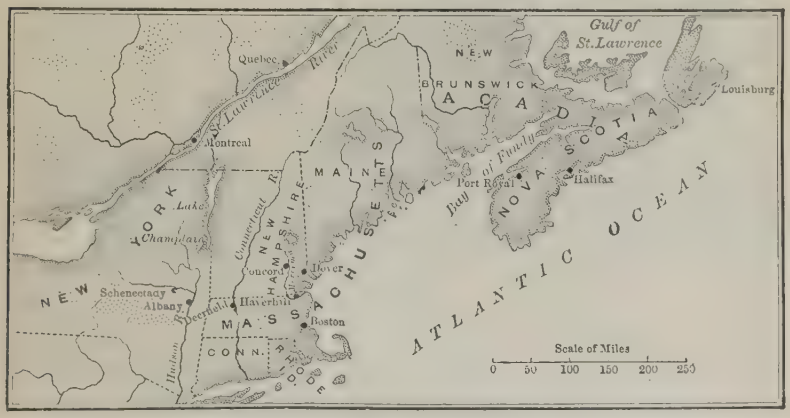
La Salle describes his journey down the Mississippi.

XIV

THE STRUGGLE WITH THE FRENCH

A FEW years after all the colonies except Georgia had been founded, war broke out between England and France. Both nations were beginning to see that it was worth while to hold land in America, and that to destroy one of the enemy's settlements counted for more than to capture one of the enemy's warships.

Who should rule in America



FRENCH FRONTIER IN THE NORTH

This is why there was fighting between the French and English colonies.

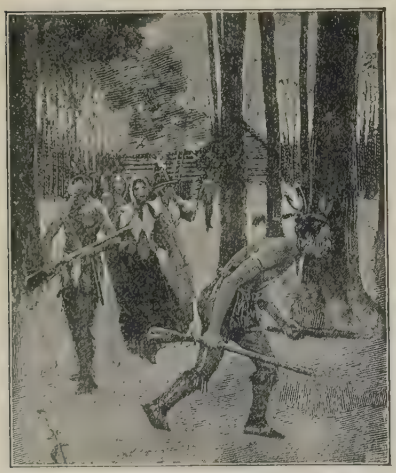
In this struggle the colonies that could be most easily reached from Canada suffered most. One of the first to be attacked was Schenectady in New York. The settlers had so little thought of danger that in jest they had put up two snow men at the gates for

Schenectady attacked

sentinels. In the night, through the storm and the darkness, the French and Indians went silently past the watchmen of snow. Not a sound was heard. Suddenly came the terrible warwhoop, and in two hours men, women, and children were slain or carried away as prisoners.

Hannah Dustan's adventures

Another raid was made upon a few farmhouses near Haverhill, Massachusetts. A sick woman named Hannah Duston was dragged away with her nurse. With the Indians was a boy captured at Worcester long before who had learned to speak their language. "They said that by and by we should have to run the gantlet," whispered the boy to Mrs. Duston. "Running the gantlet" meant running between two rows of men, each man striking at the captive as he passed. "Find out where to strike if one would kill at a blow," whispered Mrs. Duston. That night they camped on an island in the Merrimack just above Concord, New Hampshire. The two women and the boy each took a tomahawk, and, gliding silently from one sleeping Indian to another, struck the fatal blow. With ten Indian scalps to prove the deed, they made their way back to their friends.[1]



THE CAPTURE OF HANNAH DUSTON

Burning of Deerfield

A few years later an attack was made upon Deerfield, Massachusetts. It was burned and a large number of captives taken on the long march to Canada. Many of them died on the way, or were killed by the savages because they could not travel over the snow and ice as fast as the others. One little Deerfield girl finally

[1] *Acts and Resolves of the Province of Mass. Bay*, vol. VII, p. 153

married an Indian. Years afterwards, she and her brave and their children made several visits to her old home. One Sunday her relatives persuaded her to put on a gown and bonnet and go to church; but as soon as she came back, she tossed them off and went back to her Indian blanket and her Indian wigwam.

After a time of peace, word came across the ocean that France and England were at war again. The governor of Louisburg, a fortress on Cape Breton Island, heard the news first, and before Boston knew that war had been declared, he burned a little English fishing village. The New Englanders were indignant, and in their wrath they determined to capture Louisburg.

New England expedition against Louisburg

A skilled commander would have hesitated, for Louisburg was

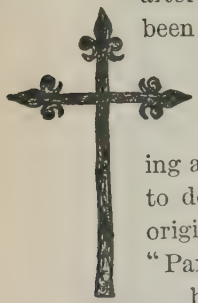
LOUISBURG FROM THE NORTHEAST
(On the right is the Royal Battery, the first French outpost to be captured)

the strongest fortress in North America; but this scheme had "a lawyer for contriver, a merchant for general, and farmers, fishermen, and mechanics for soldiers." No one in New England knew anything about besieging such a fort, and in all good faith the wildest methods were proposed. Almost as an afterthought, some English vessels were asked to accompany the expedition to prevent French ships from coming to the aid of the fortress. The

New Englanders landed. The cannon must be dragged two miles. The men were up to their knees in mud, and the cannon sank out of sight. There were few tents, and not enough blankets to go around. Shoes gave out, clothes were in tatters, the scaling ladders were too short, two thousand men were sick; and before the troops were the stone walls of the fortress, thirty feet high.

Louisburg taken

Louisburg was captured, but even the colonists themselves who afterwards went within the walls wondered how the deed had been done. It was partly because the French commander was not as bold or as wise as he should have been, and did not make the proper preparations; and partly because, while the besiegers knew nothing of the usual way of attacking a fort, they had had a hard training in finding out how to do things for themselves, and they made their assaults in original fashions that were a continual surprise to the French. "Panic seized upon us," wrote a Frenchman who was at Louisburg; and he added mournfully, "These New Englanders are a singular people." All the fighting on land was done by the colonists without other aid than the instructions of three or four gunners whom they borrowed from the fleet to show these daring soldiers how to use the cannon; yet, if the English ships had not kept the harbor clear of vessels coming to help the French, and if they had not captured one with a supply of powder just as that of the besiegers was failing, Louisburg could not have been taken.



LOUISBURG CROSS
(Captured at Louisburg and now in the Harvard Library)

When the terms of peace were arranged, England gave up Louisburg to France. This was done that England might gain some land in Hindustan, but the New Englanders were indignant, for they felt as if their great victory had gone for nothing.

Louisburg returned to France

The question, "Who shall rule in America?" was not yet settled, however. Before this, France and England had quarreled about matters in Europe, but trouble now arose about matters

Longitude West from Greenwich
130
120
110
100
90
80
70
40
30
20
PACIFIC OCEAN
ATLANTIC OCEAN
ENGLISH
SPANISH
FRENCH
LOUISIANA
CANADA
NEW FOUNDLAND
Gulf of St. Lawrence
Louisburg
ACADIA
Halifax
Port Royal
Pemaquid
Boston
Plymouth
New York
Philadelphia
Roanoke Id.
Charleston
Savannah
St. Augustine
Pensacola
Mobile Bay
New Orleans
1717
GULF OF MEXICO
FLORIDA
Bahama Is.
Havana
CUBA
WEST INDIES
HAITI
JAMAICA
PORTO RICO
TROPIC OF CANCER
L. Superior
L. Michigan
L. Huron
L. Erie
L. Ontario
L. Champlain
St. Joseph
Ft. Duquesne
Vincennes
St. Louis 1764
Kaskaskia
Ohio R.
Mississippi R.
Missouri R.
Arkansas R.
Platte R.
Red R.
Rio Grande
Colorado R.
Great Salt Lake
Santa Fé
Gulf of California
SPANISH CALIFORNIA
SPANISH MEXICO
SPANISH, FRENCH AND ENGLISH CLAIMS. IN NORTH AMERICA About 1750
SCALE OF MILES
0 100 200 400

in America. France claimed the land drained by all the rivers that she explored. "The French king might as well claim all the lands that drink French brandy," declared an Englishman; but France went on building forts and claiming land. The English were not especially interested in the Mississippi, but when the French claimed the Ohio, they were aroused. Some Virginians and Londoners formed the Ohio Company and planned to make settlements on the river. The French began at once to build forts down the Alleghany.

The French claim the land

At length Governor Dinwiddie of Virginia decided to send a letter to warn them that they were trespassing. A young man of twenty-one years was asked to carry the letter, and he set off on a dangerous journey of nearly one thousand miles. It was winter, and the path was hidden by the deep snow. The young envoy would not wait for his party, but with one companion he went straight through the woods, finding his way by the compass. They crossed the creeks by felling trees for bridges. The Alleghany was full of floating ice, and they made a raft. In the middle of the stream the messenger was jerked into the water. He was fired at by an Indian not fifteen paces away, but at last he delivered his letter and came safely home again. His friends were very proud of him, and they would have been still more proud if they had known what he would do for his country a few years later, for the young man's name was George Washington.

A youthful messenger

The only answer the French made was that the letter should be forwarded to Marquis Duquesne, the governor of Canada. Then Governor Dinwiddie sent Washington to build a fort where Pittsburg now stands. It was hardly begun when the French fell upon the party, completed the fort themselves, and named it Fort Duquesne. Washington built a small fort farther south, but when the French came upon him, he had to surrender and march back to Virginia.

The answer from the French

General Braddock takes command

The next year the English sent over General Braddock to take command. "I shall capture Fort Duquesne in three or four days, and then march on to Niagara," said he. "The Indians are skillful in laying snares," modestly suggested a wise colonist of whom we shall hear more, for his name was Benjamin Franklin. "Very likely they are troublesome to your untrained soldiers," said Braddock a little haughtily, "but the king's Regulars will have no difficulty." Washington tried to make him see that it would not do to draw up his men in lines in plain sight when fighting with Indians, but Braddock accepted no advice, and wrote home that the American troops were cowardly.

REGION ABOUT FORT DUQUESNE

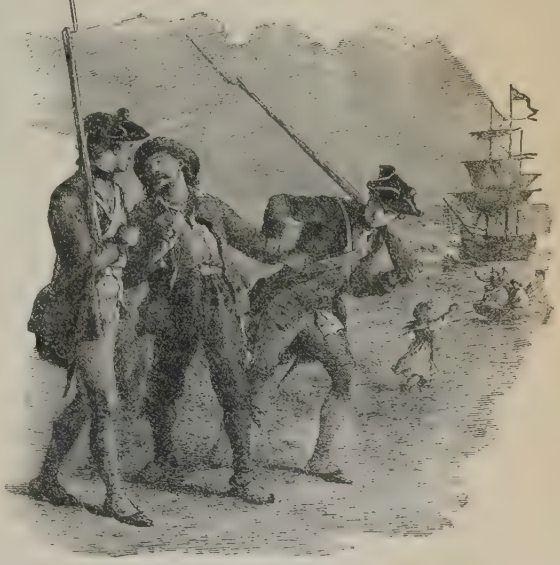
His defeat at Fort Duquesne

Not far from Fort Duquesne there was a sudden attack. Braddock was bravery itself, and the English soldiers would have stood like a wall against an enemy whom they could see, but hardly a foe was in sight. The deadly shots came from behind trees and rocks, and the soldiers had no idea where to fire. They were panic-stricken, and ran "like sheep pursued by dogs," Washington wrote home to his mother. He added, "I had four bullets through my coat, and two horses shot under me." Then he signed himself in the formal fashion of those days, "I am, honored Madam, your most dutiful son, George Washington."

Only the skill of the young Virginian saved any part of the army. Braddock was slain, and Washington buried him secretly at night, lest his grave should be insulted. The Indians strutted about the battlefield, wearing the laced hats and scarlet uniforms of the English officers.

Exile of the Acadians

One of the saddest events of the war occurred in Acadia, or Nova Scotia. Nearly all the settlers there were French, and they claimed to be "neutrals," that is, persons who would favor neither party. The English believed that they were aiding the French, and thought that if they were allowed to remain, England would lose Nova Scotia. Suddenly the English troops swept down upon the Acadians, carried six thousand of them away, and scattered them among the English colonies along the coast. In the confusion, husbands were parted from their wives, and mothers from their children. There is a tradition that a young maiden was separated from her betrothed, and wandered for many years in search of him. It is upon this story that Longfellow founded his "Evangeline." The exiles buried many of their possessions, hoping to return. Some of these things have been found, and people have not yet given up digging in search of the chapel bell of Port Royal.



EXPULSION OF THE ACADIANS

Those who came to Philadelphia were in great need, until a

The Acadians in Philadelphia

kind Quaker raised funds to build a row of little wooden houses for them, and to provide a teacher for their children. There was a strange fear of these simple, harmless people, and a young Philadelphia girl wrote that she was frightened because she had to go by the houses of the "French Neutrals" at twilight. This carrying people from their homes was not a new thing, and

THE FORTRESS OF QUEBEC AS IT IS TO-DAY

strangely enough, it is just what the French king had proposed to do some years earlier if he had captured New York.

Quebec

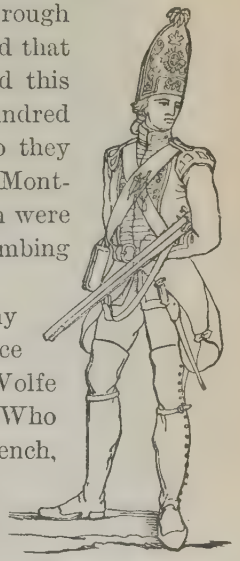
The English had won victories, but the one thing that would end the French rule in America was the capture of Quebec. Quebec was built on a great mass of rock that jutted out into the Saint Lawrence. It was one of the strongest cities in the world, and it was commanded by General Montcalm, a brave and successful French soldier. The English were commanded by General Wolfe, a young man who had won glory in previous fighting.

All summer Wolfe tried one plan after another to take the city, but in vain. Autumn came, and he planned a final attempt. He sent part of the vessels with a few men below the town to pretend to be getting ready for an assault, while the other ships with

most of the men sailed far up above the town. Montcalm was below, and one of his officers above, each expecting an attack. When night came, Wolfe and his men floated down stream in the deep shadow of the high bank. It was dark, but the stars were out. Wolfe repeated softly his favorite poem, Gray's "Elegy." "I should rather have written those lines," said he, "than to take Quebec." They came near the shore. "Who is there?" called the sentinel. "Provision boats," was the answer. "Keep still, the English will hear!" Provision boats were expected, and the sentinel asked no more questions.

Capture of Quebec by the English

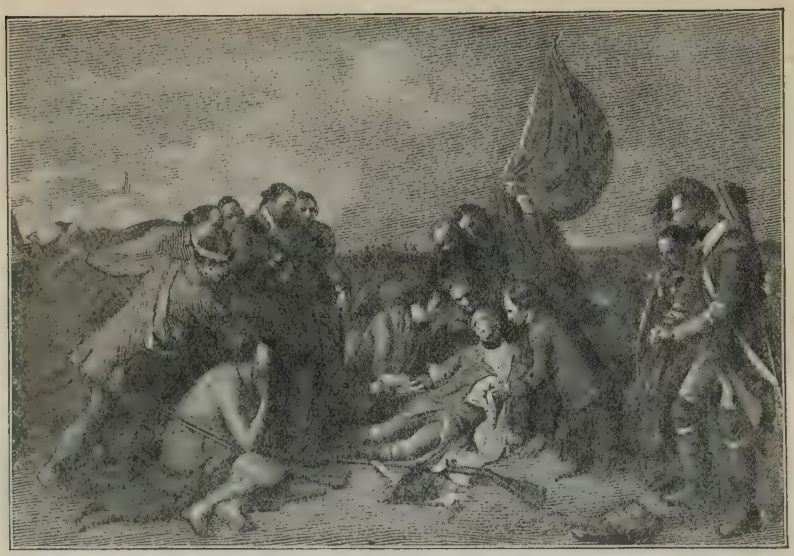
About a mile above Quebec was a high plateau called the Plains of Abraham from a pilot who lived there in the early days. Wolfe had seen with his glass far across the river a rough path up the almost perpendicular cliff, and he believed that his men could climb it. Montcalm, too, had noticed this path, but he said, "They have not wings, and one hundred men posted there could stop their whole army." So they could, but the one in charge was careless, and while Montcalm below the town and his officer above the town were each expecting an attack, Wolfe and his men were climbing up the steep cliff.



ENGLISH SOLDIER OF WOLFE'S TIME

In the morning Montcalm found an English army drawn up in line on the Plains. There was a fierce battle. Both commanders were mortally wounded. Wolfe heard his men crying, "They run! See them run!" "Who run?" he asked, and when he knew it was the French, he said, "Now I shall die in peace." Montcalm was carried to a little house in the town. "Thank God," said he, "that I shall not live to see the surrender of Quebec."

This victory in 1759 ended in America the war which lasted in Europe till 1763. France gave up to England, Canada, and all



DEATH OF GENERAL WOLFE
(From the painting by Benjamin West)

English rule established in America

the land that the French had claimed east of the Mississippi. During the war, England had captured Cuba and the Philippines from Spain, for Spain was helping France. Now England gave the islands back and took Florida in exchange. To pay Spain for this loss, France had to give her New Orleans and all the land between the Mississippi and the Rocky Mountains. The question was settled once for all that England would rule in America.

SUMMARY.

For nearly seventy-five years there were periods of fighting with the French to see who should rule in America.

The latter part of this struggle, brought on by the attempts of the French to seize the Ohio valley, was called the French and Indian War.

The capture of Quebec gave England the control in America.
After the war, England held Canada and all land east of the Mississippi.
Spain held the land between the Mississippi and the Rocky Mountains.

SUGGESTIONS FOR WRITTEN WORK.

A New England soldier writes home from Louisburg.
Washington's companion tells about the journey to the Alleghany.
An Acadian girl describes the carrying away of her people.

XV

THE TIMES BEFORE THE REVOLUTION

America in the eighteenth century was a very different country from what it is to-day. In the first place, there were probably not so many inhabitants in all the English colonies as there are now in New York and Philadelphia, and of these half a million were negro slaves. **Population**

GREAT HOUSE OF AN EARLY PLANTATION

Slaves were held in all the colonies. Indeed, England was making so much money in the slave trade that she forced slavery upon America, and ordered her officers in the New World to do all that they could to encourage the trade. In the South, a negro could live on cheap food and without many clothes or much shelter, while in the North, if he did not have good food, warm clothes, and a comfortable shelter, **Slavery**

he would die. The result was that people in the northern colonies found that slavery did not pay, and it was gradually disappearing. Even in the southern colonies there was a feeling that slavery would vanish in time. The Carolinas were not at all pleased, and even a little alarmed, to have so many negroes in their territory.

A POSTRIDER
(From a print in the Post Office Department)

Newspapers and mail

There was no daily newspaper, and if there had been, people would not have received it promptly unless they had lived near the printing-office, for even between New York and Philadelphia there was a mail only three times a week, and it took three days for the mail carrier, or "postrider," to make the journey. Once a month the mail went to England. Sending mail from colony to colony was expensive, and a letter of a single sheet sometimes cost twenty or twenty-five cents, according to the distance that it was carried. Writing a letter to a friend was not a business to be undertaken without consideration, and this is one reason why the letters of those days were so carefully and formally written.

BURNING OF MR. JOHN ROGERS
(From the New England Primer)

Books

But if the colonists had few newspapers and few books, they read all the more carefully what books they did have, and they thought about what they read. Most of the books were brought from England, but some were

written in America, chiefly volumes of sermons, discourses on witchcraft, and some rhymes so dreary that no one cares to read them now.

Almost the only book that the children could claim as their own was a tiny volume called the "New England Primer." This contained pages of Bible questions, such as, "Who was the oldest man?" or "Who was the meekest man?" There were long lists of hard names, "To teach children to spell their own," said the heading; and the Puritan boys and girls must sometimes have wondered how learning to spell Methuselah would teach them to spell John, but they would never have dared to ask. There was a picture of a man tied to a stake and burning to death because he did not believe in the king's church. The New England Primer

There were verses that this man wrote not long before he was put to death, and there was an alphabet with a picture and a rhyme for every letter. This began,—

A In Adam's Fall
We sinned all.

and ended,—

Z Zaccheus he
Did climb the Tree
Our Lord to see.

There, too, was the children's evening prayer, "Now I lay me down to sleep." This was the children's especial book, and they read it and re-read it till all the early copies were so worn out that there are no more to be found.

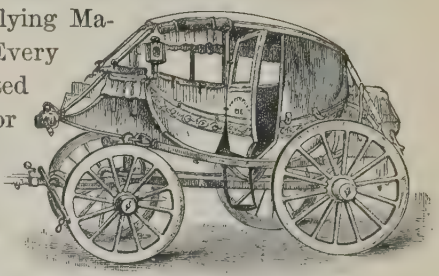
A famous book that came once a year was "Poor Richard's Almanac," written by Benjamin Franklin. Besides having tides, eclipses, etc., like other almanacs, it had good advice put into Poor Richard's Almanac

rhyme and little stories, and such proverbs as "Great talkers, little doers," and "Tongue double brings trouble," "Doors and walls are fools' paper," and "He who pursues two hares at once does not catch one and lets t' other go." There were often puzzles and riddles to be answered in the next number. Some households had little other reading except the Bible. The children must have watched eagerly for the time when the new almanac would come, and they could have new stories and see if their guesses of the puzzles were correct.

FRANKLIN'S PRINTING PRESS
(Now owned by the Bostonian Society)

Getting new clothes was a weighty matter. In the North the wool or flax must be raised, spun, and woven. In the South, even if a gown was to be bought and not *grown*, it generally had to be ordered from England; and as at least three months would have to pass before the buyer could receive it, deciding what to send for was a serious business. Traveling was difficult. To go from Philadelphia to New York took three days by stage-coach, and when it was announced that one was to make the journey in two days, people thought the name, the "Flying Machine," was well deserved. Every one who visited a city expected to have many commissions for his friends. Stage drivers and postriders "did errands." Not so very many years ago, an old lady on Cape Cod said that in her youth she and her friends always sent to Boston by the captain of the packet boat for their bonnets. "And they were pretty ones, too," she added.

Traveling



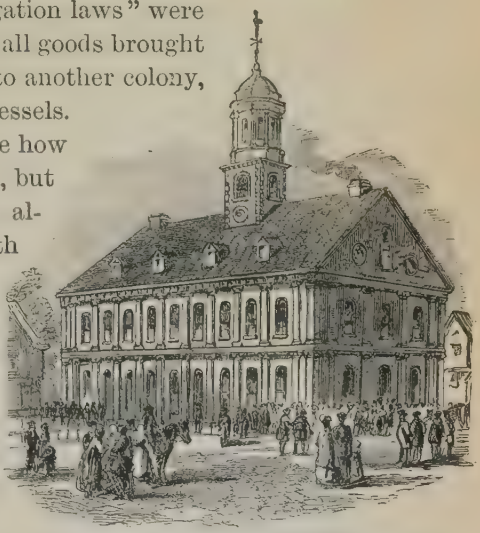
EARLY AMERICAN STAGE

Many of the things that the colonists would gladly have made

for themselves, the English law forbade them to manufacture. If they began to make hats, for instance, straightway the English manufacturers of hats would get a law passed forbidding them to make hats. Colonists were commanded to trade with England only, although they might be able to do much better in dealing with other countries. Even if one colony traded with another, a tax must be paid. The old "navigation laws" were enforced as far as possible, and now all goods brought to America, or even taken by sea to another colony, must travel in English or colonial vessels.

England forbids manufactures

Of course, looking back, we can see how unjust and unwise these laws were, but in Europe they were regarded by almost all people as perfectly fair. Both France and Spain made far more severe laws for their colonies, and indeed, colonies were expected as a matter of course to be a gain to the mother country.



FANEUIL HALL, BOSTON
(Called, on account of the patriotic meetings held there, "The Cradle of Liberty")

The colonists broke these laws as far as they dared. Articles were sent from one colony to another without the payment of any tax, foreign goods were smuggled into the coast towns, ships that had never been near England went back and forth among the settlements. We wonder how any one could have helped seeing that trouble would surely come.

The French wars cost a great amount of money. France might possibly try to regain the land that she had lost, and the king and his advisers thought it would be best to keep an army of British soldiers in America to be ready to oppose the French. England decided to tax the colonies to help pay for the war and the new

England decides to tax the colonies

standing army. The colonists answered, "We do not wish to have a standing army, and we have given more than our share to the war, for we raised and paid as many men as England." The colonists' objections made no difference, and England determined to collect in two ways the money needed. One was by imposing a few new duties and by enforcing the laws in regard to trade. As long as France had power in America, England had not dared to be very strict in demanding the taxes on goods brought from France and Spain, or very severe in punishing smuggling. Now she determined that every penny that the laws allowed should be collected.

Writs of assistance

The king's officers had the right to have a warrant written by the court allowing them to search any special house in which they had reason to think there might be smuggled goods. Now they obtained what were called writs of assistance. These allowed the officers to go into as many houses as they chose without having a separate warrant for each one, and if the doors were barred, they could call upon the sheriff to break in. This made the colonists indignant, but it was according to an old English law, and never would have caused the Revolution.

A STAMP ACT STAMP

The second way of collecting money was by requiring every legal document, like a will or a mortgage, to be written on paper stamped in England. An extra price must be paid for the stamp, and if there was no stamp, the document was of no value; for instance, if a man bought a house, he received a deed, or written paper, saying that the property was his, but if there was no stamp on the deed, then he could not defend his right to the house in the courts. After the Spanish War, the people of the United States obeyed such a law to help pay the cost of the war; but the men whom we had chosen to make our

laws were the ones who decided to raise the money in this way, and we could find no fault.

The stamp tax was quite a different matter, and the colonists replied, "In England, the House of Commons is elected by the people, and therefore has the right to tax them. We have no representatives in the House of Commons, therefore it has no right to tax us."

Right of taxation by House of Commons denied

When the legislature of Virginia knew that such a law had been proposed, they protested to the House of Commons. Patrick Henry, the greatest orator of the colonies, made a brilliant speech. "Cæsar had his Brutus," he said; "Charles the First, his Cromwell; and George the Third —" The cry of "Treason! treason!" was heard, and Henry ended quietly, "may profit by their example. If this be treason, make the most of it." The assembly voted not to obey the law. So it was that "Virginia rang the alarum bell."

The Virginia Protest

King George was really up against a big difficulty. In the United States we take a census every tenth year, and divide the seats in the House of Representatives in proportion to the population. Now in England nothing of this sort had been done for more than two hundred years. The result was that country districts with even fewer inhabitants than they had had two centuries before, had just as many representatives; while large cities were allowed no more representatives than they had had two hundred years earlier, although their taxes had increased enormously. It was then exactly the same question in England and in the colonies, Shall there be taxation without representation? The king and his friends said yes; the colonists and the wiser statesmen and large numbers of the English people said no.

How England felt toward the colonies

In 1765 the Stamp Act was passed, though many clear-headed statesmen in England were against it. Edmund Burke said it was unjust. William Pitt, who was always a friend to America, said, "England has no right to lay a tax upon the colonies." The colonies from New England to Georgia rebelled. The streets were

The Stamp Act

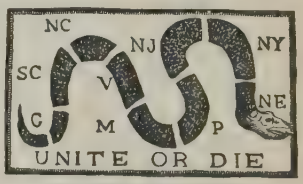
full of crowds. Images of the men appointed to sell the stamped paper were hanged or burned or driven about town in the governor's best coach with a figure of Satan for companion. The lieutenant-governor of New York threatened to fire upon the rebellious colonists. "You'll be hanged to a lamp-post if you do," was the answer, and he did not fire. In some places buildings were torn down, and every scrap of stamped paper that could be found was burned or tossed into the ocean.

Opposition by the colonies

It was not all "mob law." The assemblies met and declared that it was right to resist tyranny. Lawyers agreed that no deed or will should be called illegal for the lack of a stamp. The newspapers came out with a skull and crossbones for a heading, or with black borders indicating the death of liberty. During the French and Indian wars, Benjamin Franklin, then editor of a paper published in Philadelphia, had printed a picture of a snake cut into several parts, labeled with the names of the different colonies. It was an old superstition that a snake cut into pieces would live if the pieces were united, and under this picture Franklin printed the motto, "Unite or die." This became a favorite emblem.

Repeal of the Stamp Act

In one respect the colonists had matters in their own hands. They said, "We will not buy English goods." No orders were sent to England, and ships that crossed the ocean with goods to sell had to carry them back. Then the English manufacturers begged Parliament to give up the tax, and the act was repealed. Parliament declared at the same time that it had the right to tax the colonies, but no one thought much about that, and if King George III. had not been so unwise and so obstinate, there would probably have been no Revolution.



FRANKLIN'S DEVICE
(The initials indicate the colonies)

After a little while, new taxes were imposed, and English soldiers continued to come to America. Some were sent to Bos-

ton, and one night a quarrel arose between them and some of the citizens. The soldiers fired and killed five. It shows how aroused the colonists were that they called this the "Boston Massacre." It shows how anxious they were to be fair that when the soldiers were tried for murder, they were defended by two prominent lawyers, John Adams and Josiah Quincy, Jr. Adams said a few years later that this was "one of the best pieces of service I ever rendered my country."

The Boston Massacre

THE BOSTON MASSACRE IN KING (NOW STATE) STREET
(From Paul Revere's engraving)

The colonists refused to buy any of the goods on which a tax was demanded. Many of them agreed to buy nothing made in England so long as there were duties on any goods. One of the strong men in this party was Samuel Adams, who has been called the "Father of the Revolution."

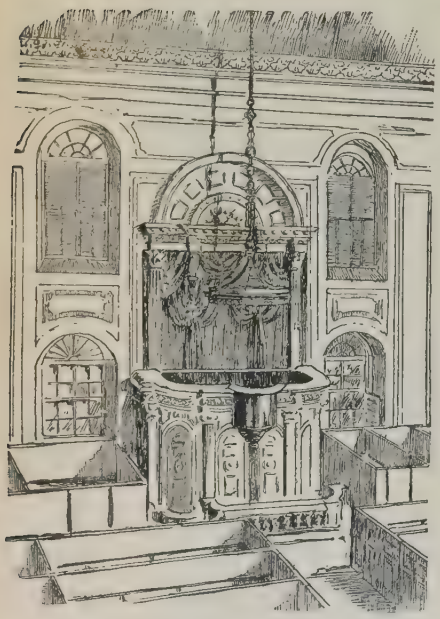
The "Father of the Revolution"

George III. and his "Friends," as those who supported him were called, formed what they thought a very shrewd scheme. The Americans used much tea, and a large part of it was smuggled from Holland. It was decided to allow tea to be sent to America and sold at so low a rate that even with a duty of three pence a pound it would be cheaper than the tea that was smuggled. "The people will buy the English tea, and the rebellious leaders will be left without support," thought the king, and the tea was sent over to the large cities on the coast.

The tax on tea

Tea brought to large cities

Charleston stored the tea sent there in damp cellars, where it soon spoiled. Philadelphia forbade her pilots to guide the tea-ships up the Delaware. New York would not let them enter the harbor. In Boston the matter was more difficult. The ships were in the harbor. They could not leave without the royal governor's permission, and he refused to give it. Nineteen days they lay at the wharf. On the twentieth day, the custom-house officers would have a legal right to unload them, the men who had ordered the tea would pay the duty, and then they would have possession of the goods.

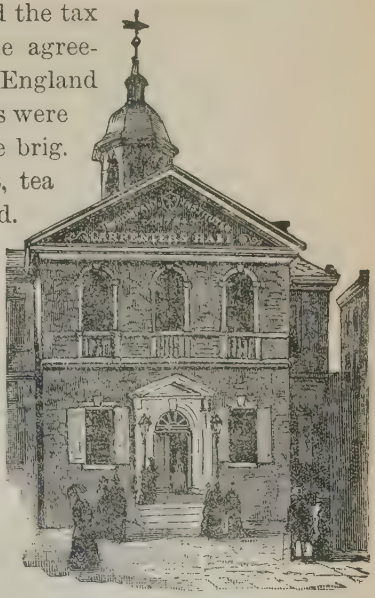


PULPIT OF THE OLD SOUTH MEETING-HOUSE

The people of Boston came together in the Old South Meeting-House. All day long they discussed what it was best to do. In the evening two hundred men appeared in the street and marched quietly toward Long Wharf. They wore blankets, their heads were muffled, and what could be seen of their faces was copper-colored. A man who saw them wrote cautiously to a friend, "They say the actors were Indians from Narragansett," but every one knew that they were white men from Massachusetts. When they came to the wharf, they leaped on board the tea-ships. Every man drew out a hatchet from under his blanket, and it was not many minutes before Boston Harbor became a vast teapot, for every chest had been broken open and all the tea was in the water. Then the "Indians" went quietly to their homes, and the "Tea-party" was over.

The Boston Tea-party

The brig Peggy Stewart brought to Annapolis some packages of tea among other goods. The vessel could not be unloaded till all taxes were paid; therefore the owner paid the tax on the tea. Before this, he had signed the agreement not to buy or import goods taxed by England for revenue, and now the people of Annapolis were so angry that they threatened to destroy the brig. To prevent a riot he burned his own boat, tea and all. This settled the matter in Maryland.



CARPENTERS' HALL, PHILADELPHIA

The king was determined to punish these bold colonists. Boston should suffer first, he said, and in 1774 the "Port Bill" was passed, which forbade ships coming to the city or leaving it. Boston would lose the money that she was making from trade, and would soon be glad to apologize and pay for the "Tea-party." So the king thought; but instead of being frightened, the other colonies stood by Massachusetts and sent her all kinds of provisions. Even far-away South Carolina sent ship-loads of rice. Cattle and sheep were driven into Boston in flocks. England had said that ships should go to Marblehead instead of to Boston; but Marblehead said at once to the Boston merchants, "Use our wharfs and our warehouses without charge."

Virginia's attitude

The Virginia House of Burgesses was in session. The brilliant orators Patrick Henry and Richard Henry Lee made stirring speeches, and the House voted to defend their liberties with arms, if the need should arise. The day on which the Port Bill was to take effect they set apart for prayer and fasting. Washington notified his constituents of this. George Mason bade his family attend church in mourning.

The first Continental Congress

England's treatment of Massachusetts aroused the colonists to send delegates to a meeting called "The First Continental Congress," which was held in Carpenters' Hall, Philadelphia. The Carpenters' Company knew that the king's officers might take their hall away for allowing the "rebels" to use it; but the only care they took was to mention no names on their record. They said merely, "Voted: That they be allowed to use our hall."

The list of names is an honor roll of heroes. From Virginia came Washington, Henry Lee, Edmund Pendleton, and the wise and dignified Peyton Randolph, who became President of the Congress. Massachusetts sent Samuel and John Adams. Edward Rutledge came from South Carolina, Philip Livingston from New York, and other notable men from the different colonies. This Congress sent a respectful petition to the king, telling him frankly what rights they thought belonged to them and in what ways they thought they had been treated unfairly.

SUMMARY.

In the eighteenth century there were not so many inhabitants in the English colonies as there are now in New York and Philadelphia.

Slavery was fast disappearing in the North, and was not always looked upon with favor in the South.

Mails were slow, and postage was expensive. There were few books, and England's refusal to permit manufactures was arousing discontent among the colonists.

England decided to tax the colonists because of the expense of the French wars and her wish to station an army in America to guard the colonies against the French.

To raise the money, the trade laws were enforced, new duties were imposed, and the use of stamped paper was required.

The colonists refused to buy English goods, and resisted the Stamp Act. All taxes were repealed except that on tea.

The attempt to force English tea upon Boston resulted in the Boston Tea party. In retaliation, Parliament passed the Boston Port Bill.

This treatment aroused the colonists to hold in Philadelphia the First Continental Congress, which sent a petition to the king.

SUGGESTIONS FOR WRITTEN WORK.

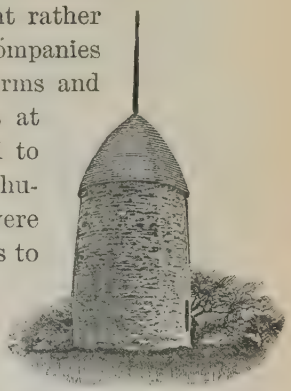
Describe the journey of a postrider from New York to Philadelphia.
A man tells in 1773 why there will probably be war with England.
A description of the Boston Tea-party.
A letter of sympathy to a Bostonian after the passing of the Port Bill.

XVI

THE FIRST TWO YEARS OF THE REVOLUTION

1775.

The Americans had little hope that the king would pay any regard to their petition, and they were ready to fight rather than yield to injustice. In almost every colony companies were formed and drilled, while in various places arms and ammunition were stored. General Gage, who was at the head of the British troops in America, decided to send eight hundred of his men to Concord, Massachusetts, to seize the powder and cannon that he knew were there. Another thing that the troops were to do was to seize Samuel Adams and John Hancock, that they might be taken to England and tried for treason.



POWDER-HOUSE NEAR BOSTON
(Where the British seized some powder Sept. 1, 1774)

This plan would have succeeded, but the Americans were on the watch, and before the British were ready to start, Paul Revere galloped through the darkness, past the villages and farmhouses on the way to Concord, telling every one that the Regulars were coming. Thousands of the Americans had become "minute men," that is, they had agreed to be ready to fight at a minute's notice. When

The battle of Lexington

the British troops came to Lexington to seize John Hancock, there stood the minute men on the green. "Disperse, you rebels!" shouted the commander. "Lay down your arms and disperse!" Not one laid down his gun. "Fire!" cried the commander. In a moment, seven Americans lay dead, and the Revolution had begun. This was on April 19, 1775.

The retreat of the British

At Concord the British began to destroy the arms, but so many minute men were upon them that there was nothing to do but to retreat to Boston. The farmers pursued. Longfellow tells the story of the retreat in his "Paul Revere's Ride:"—

"How the British Regulars fired and fled,—
How the farmers gave them ball for ball,
From behind each fence and farm-yard wall,
Chasing the red-coats down the lane,
Then crossing the fields to emerge again
Under the trees at the turn of the road,
And only pausing to fire and load."

THE MINUTE MAN
(D. C. French's statue at Concord)

Long afterwards, when Benjamin Franklin was in England, some one said that hiding behind a wall and firing was no way to fight. Franklin asked quietly, but with a sly twinkle in his eye, "Did n't those stone walls have two sides?"

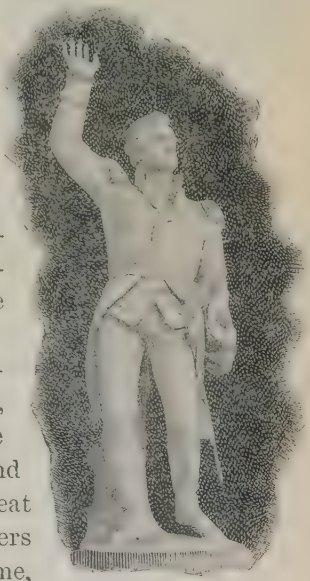
Colonists hasten to Boston

Men whose names were to become well-known hurried to Boston, and although General Gage was in command of the British troops and had been appointed by the king governor of Massachusetts, he was really a prisoner in the city, for he was surrounded by many thousand men. Among these men was Israel Putnam, of Connecticut, who had left his plough in the field and started for Boston as soon as the news of the battle of Lexington reached him. There was also Benedict Arnold with sixty volunteers. Arnold suggested that Fort Ticonderoga, at the northern end of Lake George, ought

to be captured, not only because there was in this fort a great supply of powder and guns, but because if no Americans were there to prevent, the British troops could come down from Canada and take New York.

The capture of Fort Ticonderoga

With the permission of Massachusetts, Arnold set out to raise troops in the western part of the state; but much to his surprise, he found there Ethan Allen, a sturdy Vermonter, with his "Green Mountain Boys," and they, too, were on the way to capture Fort Ticonderoga. Allen had more men, and the "Boys" would not fight under any one else, so Arnold went on, not as commander, but as a volunteer. The two men and the "Boys" came upon Ticonderoga when the garrison were fast asleep without a thought of danger. The commander was suddenly aroused by a demand to "Surrender!" He jumped out of bed, not more than half awake, and said, "To whom? By whose authority?" "In the name of the Great Jehovah and the Continental Congress," roared Ethan Allen, and the fort was surrendered. This was only three weeks after the battle of Lexington.



ETHAN ALLEN
(From the statue in the Vermont State House, Montpelier)

On that same day, the Second Continental Congress was meeting in Philadelphia. John Hancock, whom the king was so anxious to catch, was made president. Benjamin Franklin, Samuel Adams, and his cousin John Adams, Patrick Henry, the great patriotic orator, and Washington, were all members of this Congress. They knew that war must come, and they adopted the forces around Boston as the "Continental Army." A commander-in-chief must be chosen, and every one remembered how skillfully Washington had saved part of Braddock's army at Fort Duquesne

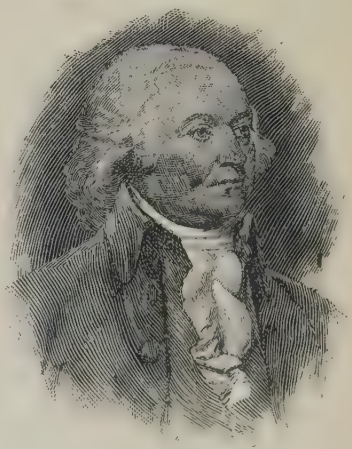
Continental Army organized

when he was only twenty-three years of age. He was from the large colony of Virginia, and the election of a southern commander for an army which was as yet made up wholly of northern men would help to strengthen the union among the colonies, so Washington was elected commander-in-chief.

SAMUEL ADAMS
(From Copley's portrait)

He set out on horseback for the eleven days' ride to Boston, but before he had gone many miles from Philadelphia, he heard what had happened in the east. General Gage was in Boston, and the American troops were in a half circle around the city. Gage knew that if they should come a little nearer and fortify Bunker Hill and Breed's Hill, they could fire into his camp. He decided to seize Bunker Hill. The Americans found out the plan, and when Gage awoke June 17, 1775, ready to send men to the hill, behold, the Americans were putting up earthworks. They were not on Bunker Hill, to be sure, but they had come even nearer and were fortifying Breed's Hill. General Gage and his officers thought just as Braddock had thought, that nothing could withstand British Regulars, and he decided to storm the hill. The Americans had too little powder to waste a single charge. "Wait, boys, wait till you

The battle of Bunker Hill



JOHN ADAMS
(From a portrait by Trumbull)

can see the whites of their eyes," called Colonel Prescott. Nearer and nearer came the British. "Fire!" ordered the commander, and there was such a volley that the brave, well-trained Regulars broke ranks and ran. Again they charged, again the Americans fired, and again the Regulars fled. A third time the British

BURNING OF CHARLESTOWN AND THE BATTLE OF BUNKER HILL
(Drawn by a British officer at the time from Beacon Hill)

dashed up the hill. The Americans' powder had given out; there was nothing to do but to retreat; and they retreated, not downcast, but jubilant, for they, the untrained farmers and citizens, had twice driven back the British veterans.

Washington takes command of the American forces

The great elm in Cambridge under which Washington took command of the army is still standing. The house in Cambridge which was his headquarters is the one that was for so many years the home of Longfellow. The poet writes:—

"Once, ah, once, within these walls,
One whom memory oft recalls,
The Father of his Country, dwelt.

. . . . . .

Up and down these echoing stairs,
Heavy with the weight of cares,
Sounded his majestic tread;
Yes, within this very room

Sat he in those hours of gloom,
Weary both in heart and head."

It is no wonder that he was weary. Thousands of men were looking up to him for orders. They were jubilant over Bunker Hill; they had not forgotten the glories of Louisburg. Many would have been glad to plunge into another battle anywhere at any moment. Washington saw that bravery alone would not always win the day, that there must also be drill and training. There must be powder and cannon. It was not time to fight.

The last appeal to the king

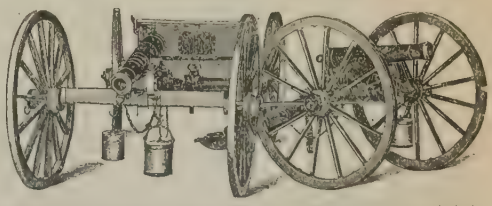
Meanwhile Congress met again. Samuel Adams said that the colonies had cut loose from England, then why not declare them independent? Others said, "No; let us try once more." A last petition was sent to the king, and the man chosen to carry it was a descendant of William Penn. This did no good, for the king would not even read the paper. It was not easy to get Englishmen to fight their own people in America, and he hired many thousand German troops called Hessians.

GREAT ELM IN CAMBRIDGE
(Under which Washington took command of the Continental army)

Montreal and Quebec attacked

For the king to call in foreigners to fight his own subjects, who felt that they were asking only for justice, made the Americans more indignant than ever. They learned that the British meant to come by the way of Lake Champlain and seize Fort Ticonderoga, so they decided to attack Montreal. Benedict Arnold suggested marching up

through the Maine forests to capture Quebec. It was a terrible journey. The men must make their way over swamps, among briers, across swiftly flowing rivers, and through the tangled underbrush. Many died. The others, sick, and weakened by their lack of food in the wilderness, made their way to the city on the rock, climbed up to the Plains of Abraham, and called upon the garrison to surrender or else come out and fight. The commander would do neither. General Montgomery had led a second expedition by way of Lake Champlain, and he soon came from his victory over the English at Montreal. There was fighting, and if Montgomery had not been slain and Arnold disabled, Quebec would probably have come into American hands.



BRITISH CANNON CAPTURED IN THE REVOLUTION

This was on the last day of 1775. In that year the Americans had taken Ticonderoga and Montreal, but they had been defeated at Bunker Hill and at Quebec. The greatest gain of the season was that they had lost their fear of the British Regulars.

Events of 1775

1776.

The year 1776 began. Washington still trained his men and did his best to collect powder and cannon. The Americans became impatient. "Why does n't he do something?" they complained. John Hancock, who owned many houses in Boston, said, "Burn the town and drive the British out." Washington was wiser than they, and he waited; eight long months he spent teaching his brave fighters to become an army. March came. Many cannon had been dragged all the way across Massachusetts from Fort Ticonderoga, and now he could "do something." General Gage had gone back to England, and General Howe had taken his place.

Washington drills his troops

The evacuation of Boston

One night General Howe had little sleep, for Washington's cannon roared until morning. When it was light, the astonished British commander saw that all this firing had been done only to keep him from finding out that the Americans were fortifying Dorchester Heights, now a part of South Boston. "Drive them from the Heights," said the commander of the fleet, "or we must leave the harbor." The American fortifications grew stronger every hour. The British remembered Bunker Hill, and, brave men as they were, they did not care to storm another hill with Americans at the top. March 17, 1776, Howe and his army sailed away for Halifax. This is why Boston celebrates the Seventeenth of March as Evacuation Day.

JOHN HANCOCK'S HOUSE IN BOSTON
(On Beacon Street, near the State House. Demolished 1863)

The British did more than to take themselves away; they carried with them nearly a thousand citizens who stood by the king, and, either because of haste or because the boats were crowded, quantities of powder and many cannon were left behind. The presence of these articles was as welcome to the Americans as was the absence of the British. Howe would surely go to New York, thought Washington; therefore he and his army went to New York to be ready for them.

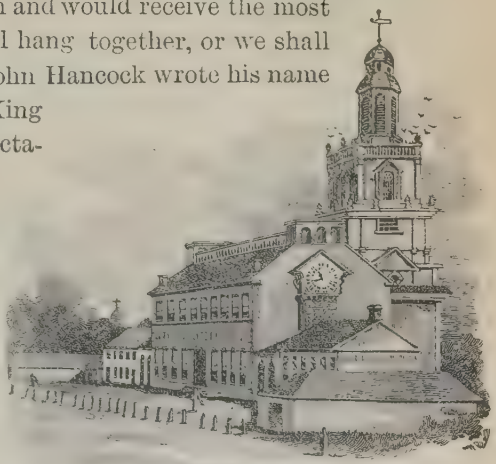
July 4, 1776, saw the great event of the year. Two days earlier, Richard Henry Lee of Virginia had moved in Congress, "That these united colonies are, and of right ought to be, free and independent

states." The resolution had been passed, and now there lay on a table in the State House in Philadelphia a document. It was the famous Declaration of Independence. Fifty-six men signed their names to it. That was all, but this act was the beginning of the United States.

The Declaration of Independence

THE LIBERTY BELL

The man who wrote the Declaration was Thomas Jefferson, a Virginian, and one of the youngest men in Congress. He was a lawyer, a musician, a skillful horseman, a student, a gentle, kindly man, but firm as an oak in the cause of liberty. It required much courage to sign this paper; for, if England won, the signers would be looked upon as the leaders of the rebellion and would receive the most severe punishment. "We must all hang together, or we shall hang separately," said Franklin. John Hancock wrote his name in a large, bold hand, "So that King George can read it without spectacles," he declared. When Charles Carroll signed, some one jestingly said, "You are safe, for there are so many Carrolls in Maryland that the king will not know where to find you." "I'll show him," replied Carroll, and wrote "of Carrollton" after his name.



OLD STATE HOUSE IN PHILADELPHIA IN 1789
(This building is now known as Independence Hall)

The colonies, or rather states, had declared their freedom; but could they force England to acknowledge it, and could they win the aid of any other country? No one could tell, but, nevertheless, there was great rejoicing. It began in Philadelphia with the ringing of the "Liberty Bell," as the bell of the State House was afterwards called. Strangely

The Liberty Bell

enough, the lettering on the bell read, "Proclaim liberty throughout the land, unto all the inhabitants thereof." This bell was cast just before Washington carried the letter through the wilderness to the French. Another message was to go to them before long, but this time Franklin was to be the messenger.

THOMAS JEFFERSON
(After the crayon portrait by St. Mémin)

South Carolina had some good news to contribute to the rejoicing. British ships had appeared off Charleston, but on an island in the harbor Colonel Moultrie had built a rough fort of palmetto logs and sand. An officer who had fought in Europe sneered at the work, but when the enemy came, the little home-made fort saved the city. Ever after this, the fort was called Fort Moultrie in honor of the leader whose wisdom and bravery had saved his state.

The king's offer of pardon

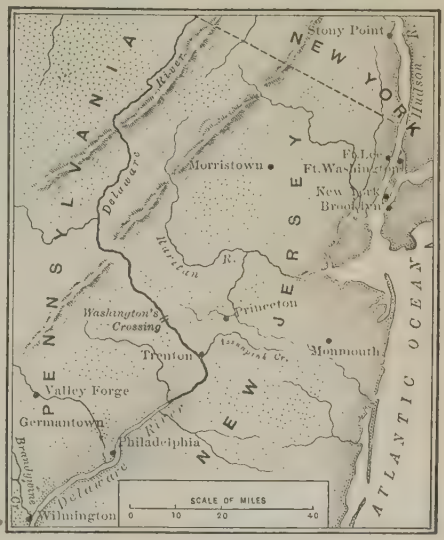
While the Declaration lay on the table in Philadelphia, Admiral Lord Howe, brother of General Howe, was crossing the ocean with more soldiers. He sent a letter to Washington addressed to "George Washington, Esq.," but the American commander would not receive it because he thought it an impertinence to the states that he should not be addressed as commander-in-chief of the army. An envoy came to see him, and told him that the letter contained the king's offer of pardon to all rebels who would cease to rebel. "We have committed no fault," said Washington, "and we need no pardon."

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN
(From a painting by Duplessis)

"Has your Excellency any message for Lord Howe?" asked the envoy. "Only my particular compliments," answered Washington courteously.

Washington had been right in going to New York, for the British planned to get possession of the city and the Hudson River. The Americans had no warships, and if the British could keep New England and the South apart, they could conquer them separately. Washington held New York and two small forts, one on the north end of Manhattan Island and one across the Hudson. He also held Brooklyn Heights on Long Island. General Howe meant to take the Heights. He had many more men, and there was nothing for the Americans to do but to flee. In the darkness of a foggy night Washington sent powder, cannon, and men across the river in any little boats that he could find, and when General Howe climbed into the fort, there was nothing there.

Washington loses New York



CENTRAL SCENE OF WAR

Washington could not hold New York now that the British had Brooklyn Heights. He went farther up the Hudson, and the British pursued. Washington had not nearly as many soldiers as would be needful to face them, and there was nothing to do but to retreat. Such a retreat as it was! Congress had no money, and the men were but half-clothed and half-fed. They marched across

Retreat to the Delaware

WASHINGTON CROSSING THE DELAWARE
(From the painting by Emanuel Leutze)

New Jersey, stopping now and then to burn a bridge behind them. At last they were safe on the Pennsylvania side of the Delaware River, while on the Jersey side were the British under General Cornwallis. The British could not cross, for Washington had taken every boat that could be found.

Christmas came. It was a sad Christmas for the Americans, but the next day there was rejoicing. Twenty years earlier Washington had crossed the Monongahela in the floating ice, and he was not to be dismayed by the Delaware. "The war is over," thought Cornwallis, and he sent his baggage to New York to be ready to sail for England. The next news that reached him was

The battle of Trenton

that this American general, who never would do what was expected of him, had crossed the Delaware in spite of the floating ice, had marched nine miles to Trenton in a fierce snowstorm, had fallen upon the Hessians, half stupefied with their Christmas celebration, and had captured one thousand. Cornwallis did not sail for England.

1776 was an eventful year. It began with an untried general training his men into an army. Before the year was over, the British had been driven from Massachusetts and South Carolina, the Declaration of Independence had been signed, and the untried general had shown that he could fight, or, if it seemed best, that he could retreat in a masterly fashion, and even in his retreat win a victory.

Events of 1776

SUMMARY.

1775. The first bloodshed of the war took place at Lexington on April 19.

The battle of Bunker Hill and the capture of Fort Ticonderoga and Montreal encouraged the colonists, though they had failed to take Quebec.

Washington took command of the American troops around Boston and trained them into an army.

The king hired Hessian soldiers.

1776. The British troops were forced to leave Boston and were defeated in South Carolina.

The Declaration of Independence was signed in Philadelphia by representatives from the colonies.

The Americans abandoned Brooklyn Heights and were obliged to retreat through New Jersey and across the Delaware River.

Washington showed his ability in his sudden marches and in his successful attack on Trenton.

SUGGESTIONS FOR WRITTEN WORK.

A boy describes the retreat of the British on April 19, 1775.

The commander of Fort Ticonderoga tells about the surrender.

A messenger tells Washington about the battle of Bunker Hill.

A British soldier describes the evacuation of Boston.

Read about the early life of Franklin, and write its story.

XVII

THE LATTER PART OF THE REVOLUTION

1777.

Bagging the fox

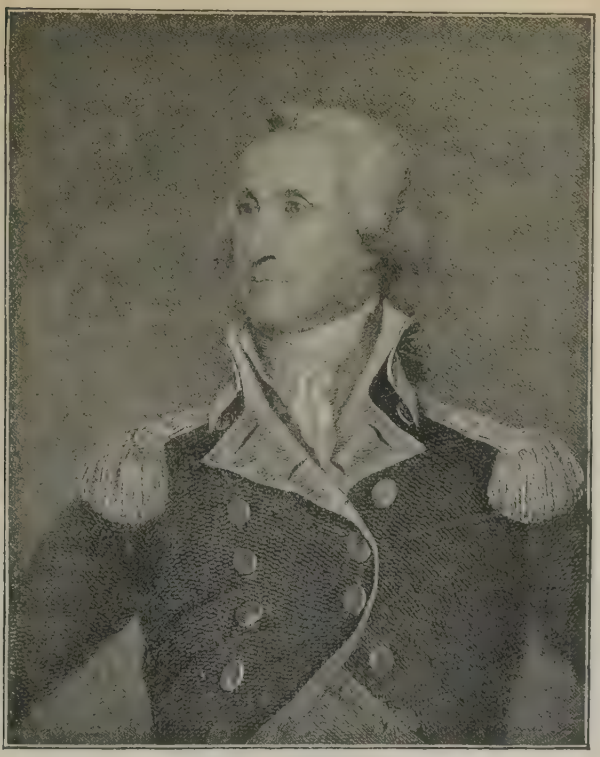
The British pursued the troublesome American general, and found him on a point of land with the Delaware on the west and a little creek on the north. Cornwallis encamped just across the creek. He thought, "My men need rest. The other forces will be here in the morning. Then we can cross the creek and bag the old fox." He slept the happy sleep of the man who sees a successful day before him.

The battle of Princeton

All night long the British sentinels could see Washington's campfires and could hear the Americans digging and throwing up fortifications. When Cornwallis awoke in the morning, he heard cannon; but they were not in front of him across the little creek, they were behind him at Princeton. The "old fox" had marched his troops around in the night, and was routing the forces that Cornwallis was patiently awaiting. The few men that had been left to keep up the fires and rattle the spades had slipped away through the woods at the last minute, and were helping to win the day at Princeton. Cornwallis was too good a soldier not to appreciate the brilliancy of this movement, and long afterwards he said to Washington, "Nothing could surpass your achievements in New Jersey."

Washington in Morristown

It was not easy to follow the Americans, for they had burned the bridges behind them, and Washington made his way safely to the high land of Morristown. So long as he was there, the British could not pass him to go to Philadelphia. They decided that the



GEORGE WASHINGTON
(From the Trumbull portrait at Yale College)

best thing to do was to spend the winter in New York, and this they did.

Differences of opinion about the war

Washington had to meet other difficulties than battles. When there is war in these days, some favor it and some do not. So it was in Revolutionary times. Some Americans were ready to give their lives and every penny they possessed to win independence. Others thought that it was a wrong and foolish thing to oppose their lawful king. Some believed that war was always a crime.

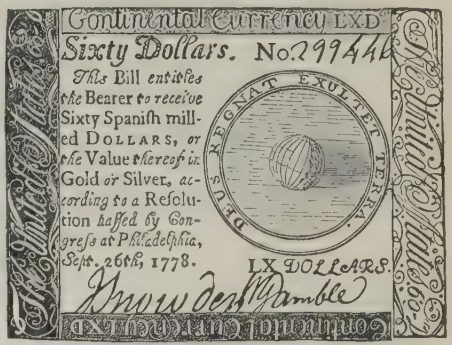
no matter for what reason it was fought. Some joined the army for adventure, some to get the pay that was promised. People were people then as well as now.

FLINTLOCK PISTOL
(Given to Washington by Lafayette)

The lack of money

The lack of money was a great difficulty. Congress had issued paper money, but paper money is of no worth unless the government that issues it is able to give gold for it that will be of value anywhere, and no one knew whether this little company of states would ever be able to pay what the bills promised. Even the truest patriot hesitated to stay in the army with no money to send to his wife and children who were starving at home. Congress had no power to make people pay taxes or to enlist. One man after another gave all that he could. Franklin lent the country his little savings; Washington would accept no salary, and he agreed to use his own fortune to pay the soldiers, if Congress failed; but it was Robert Morris, a rich banker of Philadelphia, who was the real "financial backer" of the Revolution. Washington was the winner of battles, but Robert Morris made it possible for him to have an army. Samuel Adams was the "Father of the Revolution," Washington was the general, and Morris was the banker.

Robert Morris


Continental Currency LXD
Sixty Dollars. No. 29944
This Bill entitles the Bearer to receive Sixty Spanish milled DOLLARS, or the Value thereof in Gold or Silver, according to a Resolution passed by Congress at Philadelphia, Sept. 26th, 1778.
LX DOLLARS.
DEUS NOBIS HÆC OTIA FECIT
EXULTET TERRA

CONTINENTAL PAPER MONEY
(Two thirds of the real size)

Franklin fought no battles, and he had little money to give. The thing that he gave was influence, the power to persuade men to do as he wished. Not long after the Declaration, Franklin and

two others had been sent to France to try to win the help of the French king. So long as the revolt was only a rebellion, the king could have nothing to do with it; but if there was good hope of its being a successful revolution, he was ready to strike a blow at the land that only twenty years before had driven him out of his possessions in America. It began to appear that Washington was a great general. There was once a Roman commander who could not only fight, but who weakened his enemy by "prudent delay." His name was Fabius, and Washington began to be called the "American Fabius." The French king hesitated.

Franklin in France

Meanwhile Franklin became the fashion in France. The Parisians delighted in even his whims and oddities. Every one wanted to see how "Poor Richard" looked and to hear him talk. The government moved slowly, but there was a rich young nobleman named Lafayette, only nineteen years old, who would not wait for king or councilors. He bought a ship, fitted it out, invited some veterans to go with him, and sailed away for the land whose independence he meant to help win. The Americans rejoiced at his coming, and he was happy with them. "I feel as if I had known them twenty years," this boy of nineteen wrote home. Lafayette was a brave soldier, and the veterans who came with him were of the greatest help to Washington in training his troops; but of most importance was the evidence that friends across the seas would surely help America if she could only endure a little while longer.

LAFAYETTE
(From a contemporary engraving)

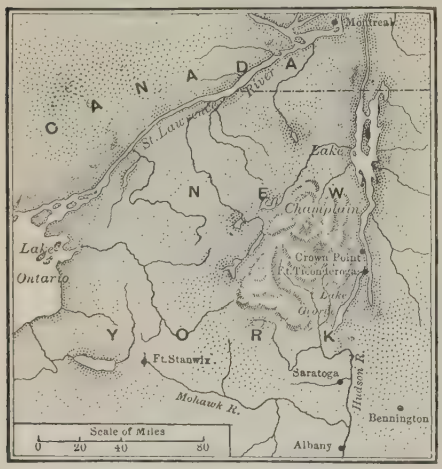
Lafayette comes to America

Burgoyne's invasion

During the winter the British government planned for General Howe to go up the Hudson; for General Burgoyne to come down from Canada, capturing Fort Ticonderoga on the way, and for another body of troops to come from Lake Ontario down the Mohawk Valley. All three would meet, and the British would control the State of New York.

The battle of Bennington

Burgoyne captured Ticonderoga. Food, horses, and ammunition had been collected in the little Vermont village of Bennington, and Burgoyne planned to send some soldiers to take these supplies. The plan might have succeeded if it had not been for Colonel John Stark, a New Hampshire man who had fought in the French and Indian wars and at Bunker Hill. In the promotions Congress had not done him justice. He was too indignant to serve in the army; but when the British invaded his own state, for Vermont was then claimed by New Hampshire, he raised eight hundred men, asked an American officer to lend him a regiment, and marched out to fight. "I'm under no man's command," said he. "I take my orders from the State of New Hampshire." His men had no uniforms, and their weapons were anything that they could get, but they carried the day. Congress pardoned Stark for making war all by himself and appointed him a brigadier-general.



REGION OF BURGOYNE'S INVASION

Burgoyne was in great danger, but if the troops could come down the Mohawk, he would be saved. This expedition had

come as far as Fort Stanwix, where Rome now stands. There had already been fighting. The Americans had dashed out of the fort and captured five British flags. They hoisted them upside down, and far above them there floated the most remarkable banner that ever waved in the New York wilderness. One soldier gave a white shirt, another an old blue jacket, and a third contributed some strips of red flannel from his wife's petticoat. So it was that the flag adopted by Congress was made, and for the first time "Old Glory" swung out to the breeze.[1] Benedict Arnold had been sent to assist the soldiers at Fort Stanwix. He contrived to spread the rumor ahead of him that Burgoyne had been defeated. The British fled back to Lake Ontario.

The American flag

These rumors became true not long afterwards, for General Howe seemed to think chiefly of capturing the "rebel capital," as he called Philadelphia, and the paper ordering him to go up the Hudson and help Burgoyne lay in the desk of a man in London who had gone off for a vacation and forgotten all about it. Two battles were fought near Saratoga, and Burgoyne was obliged to surrender. One of the soldiers wrote: —

Burgoyne's surrender

"The seventeenth of October
They did capitulate;
Burgoyne and his proud army
Did we our prisoners make."

The main event of 1777, the third year of the war, was the failure of the British to gain the Hudson. To prevent this, Washington had lost Philadelphia; but the enemy could be driven from Philadelphia; while the British, once in full possession of the Hudson, could have conquered the country at their leisure. His skillful retreat across New Jersey, his victory at Princeton, and his masterly fashion of delaying the enemy when he could not fight them, had won the attention of Europe, and had given his

Events of 1777

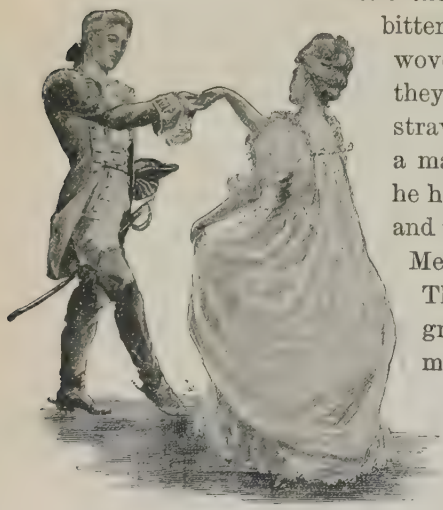
[1] Fiske's *American Revolution.*

soldiers that confidence in their leader without which the most competent general is helpless. Still, if Washington had known what lay before him in the next few months, it seems as if even he would have quailed.

1778.

Valley Forge

The British forces were in Philadelphia, comfortably housed, well fed, giving balls, and amusing themselves. Washington and his men were at Valley Forge. A small stone house which is still standing was the headquarters of the commander. One room is devoted to portraits of him, but in those harassing days he had little thought of his own portrait. It was bitterly cold. The men were in huts of woven boughs, or any rude shelter that they could make. There was not even straw enough for their beds, and many a man sat by the fire all night because he had no blanket. Shoes were lacking, and the bare feet left blood on the snow. Meat failed, sometimes bread failed. The country was not poor, but Congress had little power and none too much wisdom.



A REVOLUTIONARY DANCE

The arrangements for providing the army with food were absurd. Men were appointed to positions which they had no idea how to fill, and men whose bravery deserved a great reward were passed over. A conspiracy was formed against Washington. He knew of it, but went on calmly through even the sufferings of that terrible winter.

The great gain of those dreary months was that the army was

finely drilled for future work. Baron von Steuben, a great German soldier, came to America expressly to help Washington train his barefooted, half-naked men. France had sent him, for she had decided to help the colonies, and she wished the American army to be drilled by a thoroughly competent drill-master. Baron von Steuben was hot-tempered. He would storm at the men in a mixture of German and French, and call for some one to come and scold them for him in English. The next minute he would applaud their quickness in learning the difficult manœuvres. The men were fond of the gruff, kind-hearted old soldier, and were most willing learners.

Baron von Steuben drills the American troops

BARON VON STEUBEN

When Franklin in Paris heard that Howe had captured Philadelphia, the old philosopher said, "Howe has not taken Philadelphia, but Philadelphia has taken Howe," and that was really the way it seemed. He was in the city, but Washington was only twenty miles away, and Howe could not well do anything but stay in the city, and feel as happy as possible over the fact that he had taken the "rebel capital."

Howe in Philadelphia

Spring came. A French fleet was on its way to help the Americans. The British had found that it was of no use to stay in Philadelphia, and they started to bring their forces together in New York. Washington pursued. There was a battle at Monmouth, now Freehold, and had it not been for the insolent disobedience of a jealous officer, it would have been a great victory.

Aid is coming

All the summer and autumn of 1778 there were no great battles, but there were skirmishes in many places between small

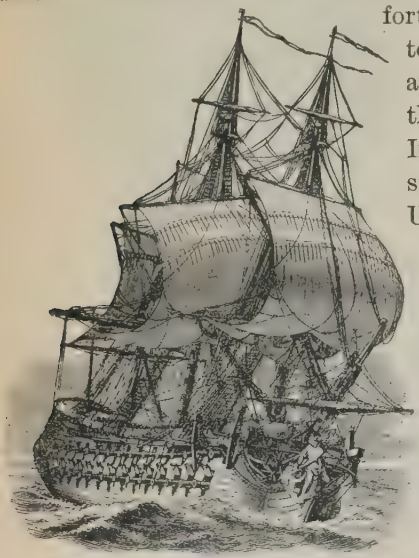
Indians and Tories

bodies of troops. In one way some of these attacks were worse than the real battles, for the British had induced the Iroquois to join them. Bands of these savages, the most fierce of all the Indians of the east, were led by Tories, or men who still wished to be under the king. They fell upon little settlements in New York and Pennsylvania, and tortured and murdered the helpless people with the most terrible barbarity.

A BACKWOODSMAN OF THE REVOLUTION[1]

Clark saves the Northwest

The "far West," or what is now Indiana and Illinois, was in danger. There were forts and old French towns here and there, and the English thought they could unite the Indian tribes and destroy these settlements. Unfortunately for their schemes, a young Virginia surveyor named George Rogers Clark also had a scheme. Thomas Jefferson, and Patrick Henry, who was then governor of Virginia, approved his plan, and he set out for Indiana with a few men. When his messengers returned to Virginia, they had a thrilling story to tell, for the adventurous young surveyor had taken Vincennes and other places. He had driven back the British, and had actually won for the United States the vast expanse of country be-



A FRENCH FRIGATE

[1] From the statue in Richmond of Andrew Lewis, a Revolutionary leader in Kentucky.

tween the Ohio and the Great Lakes, and as far west as the Mississippi.

The British had failed in their two attempts to win the State of New York, their plans to conquer New England had not succeeded, and now they decided to begin at the southern end of the line of colonies and try to get possession of Georgia. They were successful, and they began to feel as if this plan would surely conquer the rebellious colonies.

The British attack Georgia

The year 1778 began with the sufferings at Valley Forge, and ended with the loss of Georgia; but, on the other hand, during this year France had become the ally of America, and the "far West" had been saved for the states. Such a year could hardly be called unsuccessful.

Events of 1778

1779.

There had been many sea fights between English and American vessels. Sometimes one side won, and sometimes the other. The greatest naval fight was between the British man-of-war Serapis and the American ship Bon Homme Richard, so called in honor of Franklin's "Poor Richard." It took place just off the coast of England. The captain of the American vessel was a Scotchman named John Paul Jones. After an hour's cannonading, the captain of the Serapis called, "Have you struck your colors?" "I have n't yet begun to fight," shouted Captain Jones.

The Bon Homme Richard and the Serapis

In these days a naval battle is carried on by cannon between ships a long way apart, but in Captain Jones's time one vessel sometimes clutched the other with grappling hooks, and there was a short, savage, hand-to-hand fight on deck. So it was between these two vessels, and the Bon Homme Richard was victorious. England could endure to lose a battle on land, but to be so thoroughly defeated on the ocean and just off her own coast was humiliating. It was a little embarrassing to claim to be "Mis-

FIGHT BETWEEN THE SERAPIS AND THE BON HOMME RICHARD
(From a painting by Richard Paton)

tress of the Seas," when in a fair fight one of her new men-of-war, well-armed, and manned with a trained crew, had been beaten by an old American ship with poorer guns and a crew from at least six or eight different nations. It is no wonder that other countries began to feel more and more confident that America would win.

1780.

Both England and America in difficulties

In 1780 both America and England were in difficulties. America needed money. Had it not been for the gifts and loans of France, she would have had to yield before. The paper money of the Continental Congress was only laughed at, and the old phrase of scorn, "not worth a Continental," has not yet gone out of use. Washington said, "It takes a wagon-load of money to buy a wagon-load of provisions." England needed friends, for France and several other countries had united to oppose her.

England had failed in New York, but she had succeeded in Georgia, and she meant to take South Carolina and work her way north. At first all went smoothly, for Cornwallis captured

Charleston and Camden. Soon he wrote home, "But for Sumter and Marion, South Carolina would be at peace." Marion was called the "Swamp Fox," but this would have been as good a name for almost any of the fighters who were such a trouble to Cornwallis. They lived in the swamps and on the mountains, and whenever the English felt especially secure, a band of these men would suddenly dash out, shoot a few "red-coats," rescue a handful of prisoners, and be out of sight before the enemy had a fair look at them. Indian warfare had been a good training for the Americans, and the Regulars never could become accustomed to this exceedingly irregular fashion of fighting.

Guerrilla warfare in the south

THE SEAT OF WAR IN THE SOUTH

Among Washington's most trusted officers was Benedict Arnold. He had helped to capture Ticonderoga, he had led the march through the Maine wilderness, he had gone to the aid of Fort Stanwix, and he was one of the two men who had forced Burgoyne to surrender. Congress had not promoted him as he — and Washington — thought he deserved. Instead, however, of behaving so nobly that every one would see that Congress had made a mistake, he committed such a crime that people felt that Congress had been in the right.

Benedict Arnold

The one thing that the British wanted most was to gain control of the Hudson. The strongest fort on the river was at West Point. Arnold asked Washington to give him command of it, and Washington did so willingly, and without the least suspicion that his trusted officer meant to surrender it to the enemy. Major André was sent by the English to make the final plans. He was

Arnold's treason

captured, papers showing his mission were found in his possession, and he was hanged as a spy. Arnold escaped to the British lines. He received a large amount of money and was made an officer in the British army, but he was despised for being a traitor. André was risking his life to serve his own country, and although by the custom of war he was hanged, every one was sorry, and wished Arnold could have been in his place. The traitor is said to have asked an American prisoner what his countrymen would do with him if they caught him. "They would bury with the honors of war the leg that was wounded at Quebec and Saratoga, and the rest of you they would hang on a gibbet," was the answer.

MAJOR ANDRÉ
(From a portrait by himself)

This terrible treason of the man whom he had trusted was a heavy blow to Washington. Tears fell from his eyes, but in all his sorrow and wrath he remembered the grief and anxiety of Arnold's wife, and sent her a message that her husband had escaped. So ended the year 1780, saddened by losses in the South, by the treason of a trusted officer, and by sufferings at Morristown, where Washington's army wintered, equal to those at Valley Forge.

1781.

A hard winter at Morristown

During the winter of 1780–81 the soldiers were freezing and starving, and seemed almost ready to revolt, but when British spies offered high pay to any one who would desert and join the English army, the men indignantly refused.

Washington was keeping close watch on the Hudson, but in the South Cornwallis held South Carolina. General Greene was sent

THE SURRENDER OF CORNWALLIS
(From Trumbull's picture in the Capitol at Washington)

against him. Sometimes one lost and sometimes the other, but, losing or winning, Greene was marching across North Carolina, and the British were pursuing. In the middle of the summer Cornwallis went to Yorktown, Virginia. The English ships would soon bring aid from New York, he thought. So they would, but the French ships were coming, too. Lafayette, whom he called "the boy," was pressing nearer. Washington suddenly dashed across the country and joined his ally. The French ships were on one side, the American forces on the other; there was nothing to do but to yield. October 19, 1781, Cornwallis surrendered. The news came to Philadelphia in the night. It was the custom for the watchman to call the hour and say, "All is well;" but that night he called, "Past three o'clock, and Cornwallis is taken!" Except for a little trouble with the Indian allies of the British,

Cornwallis surrenders at Yorktown

the war was over. The Americans were free, and now it remained to be seen what they would do with their freedom.

SUMMARY.

1777. Washington's ability as a commander won respect in Europe.
Franklin gained friends in France, and Lafayette came to aid the Americans.
1778. The British took Philadelphia, but their plan to cut New England from New York failed, and Burgoyne's army was captured at Saratoga.
The Americans suffered much at Valley Forge from cold and hunger, but France promised aid and Clark saved the Northwest for the United States.
The British planned to take Georgia and work to the north.
1779–1781. The victories of the Bon Homme Richard increased European confidence in the final success of America.
Arnold's treason was a great blow to Washington and to the country.
The surrender of Cornwallis in 1781 practically closed the war.

SUGGESTIONS FOR WRITTEN WORK.

One of Cornwallis's soldiers writes home what happened on the Delaware.
Describe the making of the flag at Fort Stanwix.
A day at Valley Forge.
A British soldier describes one of Marion's attacks.

XVIII

THE YEARS OF WEAKNESS

1782–1789.

Disagreements among the colonies

The thirteen colonies had stood together to resist the king, but now each one began to think what would be best for itself. There were many difficult questions to settle, and no one had any right

WASHINGTON RESIGNING HIS COMMISSION AS COMMANDER-IN-CHIEF
(From Trumbull's painting in the Yale Art Gallery)

to settle them. The most pressing matter was how to raise money. Congress could impose taxes, but if a state did not choose to pay them, there was no power to make it; and some people said, "We would not let Parliament tax us, and we will not let Congress." During the war, the Americans had paid no debts to British merchants, and, indeed, had been forbidden to pay such debts. Congress now requested the people to pay, but they did not obey. England retaliated in several ways, one of which was to pass laws that injured American commerce. The Americans could not make any such laws against England and so force that country to treat them fairly, because a law that might be of advantage to one state might not be of value to another, and they could not agree among themselves what laws to make. Each state was looking out for itself, and there were so many disagree-

Financial difficulties

ments that few people in Europe believed the union would last. "They 'll soon come back," thought George III., "and ask to be under our rule again." Some of Washington's officers even began to plot to have a kingdom and make their commander king, but he sternly rebuked them for thinking of such a plan.

The Northwestern Territory

Fortunately there was one thing in which every state was interested, and that was the Northwestern Territory. Several states had claims upon it, but at last it was agreed to put the whole area into the hands of Congress in the hope that it could be sold to settlers and the war debt paid. Any state leaving the union would lose its share of the vast amount of money that, it was thought, would be realized from this land.

The Constitution

Six years after the surrender of Cornwallis, it was decided to hold a convention in Philadelphia "to form a more perfect union," and then it was that our Constitution was written. This was not an easy thing to do, for each state was guarding its own rights, and was afraid of having less power than the others.

THE PRESIDENT'S ARMCHAIR IN INDEPENDENCE HALL

How to represent the people fairly was the hardest question. "A large state should have more representatives," said one. "A small state has its all at stake just the same as a large one," declared another. At last it was decided that each state, whether large or small, should choose two men to send to Congress, and so the Senate should be made up. Men should also be sent to form the House of Representatives, and the number of these sent from each state should depend upon the population of the state.

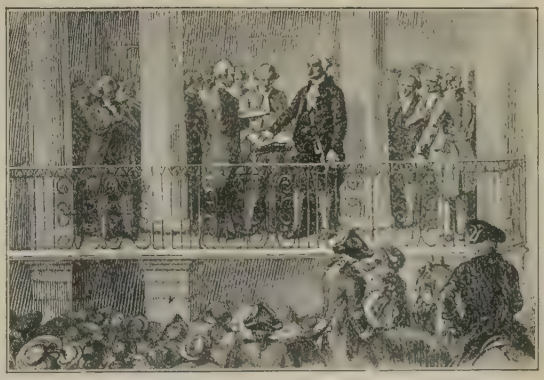
The President's term of office

How long the President should be in office was another hard question to decide. Some said one year. "That is not long enough for a man to accomplish anything," said one party. "Let us have it seven years." "A dishonest president would gain too much

power in seven years," the other party declared. Finally the term of four years was decided upon. It was also agreed that Congress should make the laws, that the President should have power to oblige people to obey them, and that the Supreme Court, formed of judges chosen by the President, should settle all disputes about the meaning of the laws.

Congress

The Supreme Court



INAUGURATION OF WASHINGTON

There was much discussion about this Constitution in the different states, but at last all thirteen adopted it. Then each state chose electors, or men to vote for a president. Every one of the electors voted for Washington, and in 1789 he became the first President of the United States.

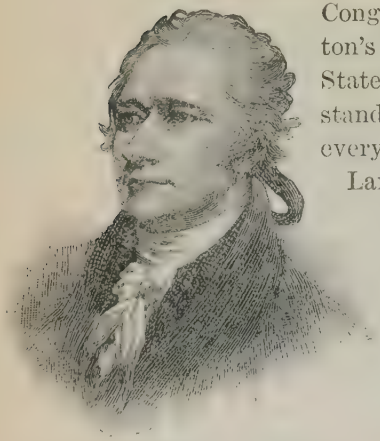
The first President

1789–1817.

The first difficulty for the states to meet was the lack of money. The Continental Congress had never been able to pay what it borrowed, and no foreign nation would lend them a dollar. A wise man named Alexander Hamilton was made Secretary of the Treasury, and so it became his business to suggest to Congress the best way to manage the money affairs of the country. He said, "Let us tax all foreign goods brought into the United States for sale. This will make the price higher, of course, but it will yield revenue and will enable our manufacturers to make many things that we now bring from Europe." Then he suggested,

The lack of money

"Let us agree to pay all the money that the Continental Congress borrowed." His third suggestion was a little startling, for it was, "Let us promise to pay whatever each state borrowed." Finally Congress agreed. These suggestions of Hamilton's were very wise, for those whom the United States owed saw that if the government did not stand, they would never get their money, and every creditor became a friend to the new nation.



ALEXANDER HAMILTON
(From Trumbull's portrait in Boston)

Large amounts of money were soon to come into the country in a way that no one had thought of. A young man in Connecticut was asked to go to Georgia to teach the children of a rich planter. When he arrived, some one else had been engaged, and he was far from home and almost penniless. General Greene's widow had met him on the long journey south, and she invited him to her home. In Georgia the chief business was raising rice and indigo, though of late years planters had begun to sow cotton. Cotton had been brought from India before this, and the planters were sure of a high price for all that they could send to market. They had little to sell, however, for the cotton clings fast to its small seeds, and all these had to be picked out before it could be woven. One day a planter said to Mrs. Greene, "If we only had a machine that would get these seeds out, we could all be rich." "Here is Mr. Whitney," she said. "He made me this embroidery frame, and if any one can make such a machine, I believe that he can." The result of the conversation was the invention

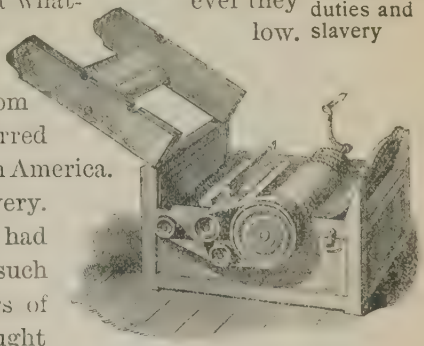
The cotton-gin is invented

FLOWER AND BOLLS OF THE COTTON PLANT

of the cotton-gin, with which a man could clear at least fifty times as much cotton in a day as without it.

Effect of cotton-gin on duties and slavery

Southern planters now began to raise much cotton. They did not weave it, but sold it and bought whatever they needed; therefore they wanted duties low. The North raised no cotton, and a large share of the northern income came from manufactures; therefore the North preferred high duties on goods that could be made in America.



WHITNEY'S COTTON-GIN

The cotton-gin encouraged negro slavery. Before this, many, even in the South, had felt that it would be good to have no such thing as slavery, but now large numbers of workers were needed, and it was thought that the negroes would not work unless they were slaves. If cotton was not plenty, the mills in the North would make less money, and, therefore, many Northerners were willing to have slavery flourish.

Trouble with France

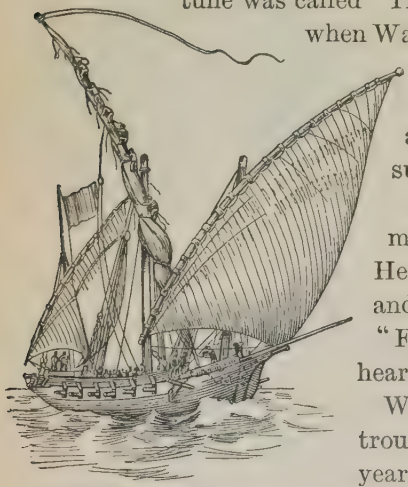
John Adams became president in 1797. Before that time, France declared war against England and wished the United States to join her; but our government refused to have anything to do with European disagreements. France was angry and began to destroy our vessels. The French minister, Talleyrand, suggested that this would be stopped if the Americans would bribe some of the officials of the French government.

A COTTON-FIELD

Then Charles Pinckney, who had been sent to France to represent the United States, declared that his country had "millions for defense, but not one cent for tribute." These words were in every one's mouth, just as in the Revolution every one was saying, "No taxation without representation." "America is not scared," wrote Adams. "France shall do as she pleases." The thought of another war made the union of the states stronger.

Hail, Columbia

This was when the words of "Hail, Columbia," were written, though the music had been composed several years before. The tune was called "The President's March," and was first played when Washington was going through Trenton on his way to New York to be inaugurated. Our small navy began to attack French vessels, and was so successful that France soon suggested that we should be friends.



BARBARY PIRATE VESSEL

In Adams's administration, in the last month of 1799, Washington died. General Henry Lee pronounced the funeral oration, and then it was that Washington was called "First in war, first in peace, and first in the hearts of his countrymen."

While Jefferson was president, there was trouble with Africa. For several hundred years the people living in the Barbary States in northern Africa had been accustomed to demand tribute from all vessels that came their way. If this tribute was not paid, they would seize the vessels. Any wealthy men that might be on board were kept for ransom, and the others were sold as slaves. These pirates were so fierce and savage and had so many vessels that the nations of Europe had paid them tribute rather than run the risk of losing their merchant ships. For the lack of warships, the United States did the same thing at

Suppression of the Barbary pirates

first, but very unwillingly. One officer, sent to pay the tribute, wrote home that he hoped he should never be sent to pay tribute again unless he could deliver it from the mouth of a cannon. At last warships were sent against the Barbary States, and one of their chief cities was bombarded. Then the ruler thought it was time to ask for a treaty with the United States, and to cease meddling with American ships.

Suppression of the Barbary pirates

CANNON CAPTURED FROM THE BARBARY STATES

About this time the United States suddenly became more than twice as large as it had been before. When the French and Indian War came to an end, the immense tract of land north of Texas and between the Mississippi and the Rocky Mountains was given to Spain. After a while, France gained possession of it again. France owned also some land on the east of the Mississippi at its mouth; and, therefore, if she chose, she could prevent the Americans from using the river. Jefferson sent two men to see whether Napoleon, emperor of France, would sell New Orleans. Napoleon was about ready to make war upon England. He wanted money, and he did not want this land in America, for England could easily seize upon it. While the two envoys were thinking about New Orleans, he suddenly offered them the whole territory known as Louisiana at two and a half cents an acre. Such a bargain as this was not to be passed, and the land was bought. No one knew much about it, and some said not a settler would go there for a century; but the purchase would give the right to use the Mississippi, and it would prevent England from ever holding the land, so that most Americans were glad.

Louisiana Purchase

MERIWETHER LEWIS

Exploration of the western land

Jefferson sent out a party at once to explore the new territory. The leaders were his secretary, Meriwether Lewis, and William Clark, whose brother George had saved the Northwestern Territory for the Americans. They went up the Missouri, then made their way to a branch of the Columbia, and so down to the Pacific Ocean, which was, as their journal says, "more raging than pacific." The Columbia River had been discovered more than a century before this by a Rhode Island captain, who gave it the name of his vessel.

A WARSHIP'S GUN-DECK IN 1800

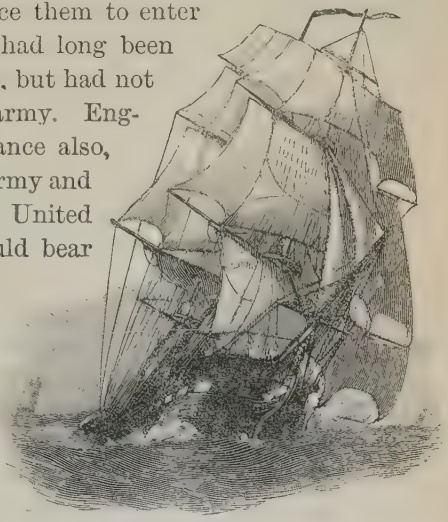
Again the quarrels of Europe made trouble for the United States. France and England were at war. Napoleon gave notice that he should fire upon any vessel carrying goods to England; and England declared that she should seize any vessel carrying goods to France or to any of the countries that were on the side of France. Congress believed that both France and England needed our goods so badly that if none made their way to either country, these declarations would be withdrawn, and so they made a law called the Embargo Act, forbidding any American vessel to leave port. People who depended upon commerce suffered greatly by this act. They spelled its name backwards and called it the O-grab-me act. It hurt the United States much more than France or England had done, and before long it was repealed.

The Embargo Act

Causes of the War of 1812

Madison became president. He was a gentle, courteous, scholarly man, but it was during his term of office that a second war with England was fought. One cause was the interference with our commerce. Another was England's claim that no Englishman could become a citizen of any other country, and her

exercising what was called the right of search. An English war- Right of search
ship meeting an American vessel would signal it to stop, and would fire at it if the order was not obeyed. Then the English captain would take from the crew of the American ship all the men that he thought were Englishmen, even if they had become American citizens. If he needed sailors, he would not be particular to make sure that these men were of English birth. He would claim that no one could tell an American from an Englishman, and so he would carry off what men he chose, and force them to enter the British navy. The United States had long been indignant at this behavior of England, but had not been able to prevent it for want of an army. England was engaged in the war with France also, but she had a large and well-trained army and sixty times as many warships as the United States. Nevertheless, this country would bear no more, and war was declared. The contest is called the War of 1812.



OLD IRONSIDES
(Built in Boston, 1797, and now at the Charlestown Navy Yard)

The first aim of the Americans was to conquer Canada, but they did not succeed. As the enemy were invading the Northwestern Territory, it began to be clear that the only way to keep them out was to gain possession of Lake Erie. A young naval officer named Oliver Hazard Perry was sent to Erie, Pennsylvania, to build a fleet.

To keep English ships from sailing up the Saint Lawrence, the frigate Constitution under Captain Hull was sent at the beginning of the war to cruise about the Gulf. One afternoon he caught sight of the British frigate Guerrière, the ship of all ships that he was most eager to meet, for he had once been chased nearly three The Constitution and the Guerrière

days by the Guerrière and the rest of her fleet, and he meant to have his revenge. The British captain was ready, for he was sure that he could capture any American vessels "with a bit of striped bunting at their mastheads," as he said scornfully. The fight was not half an hour long. The masts of the Guerrière were shot away, and her hull was riddled with cannon balls. There was nothing to do but to surrender. The wreck was not worth saving, and it was set afire. New England had not favored this war, but when Captain Hull appeared in Boston harbor, the city made ready to give him such a reception as she had never given to any man before. To sink an English frigate was enough to arouse the enthusiasm of this little nation with its navy of sixteen vessels. One city gave Hull and his officers swords, another presented silver plate. State dinners and decorations and cheering and illuminations and the waving of flags were everywhere. As for England, this victory was perhaps one of the greatest surprises that she had ever known, and she became more and more surprised as time passed. In the long war with France she had taken hundreds of ships and lost only five; but in the first six months of this War of 1812 she "had had six naval battles, had lost six ships, and had not taken one."

Old Ironsides

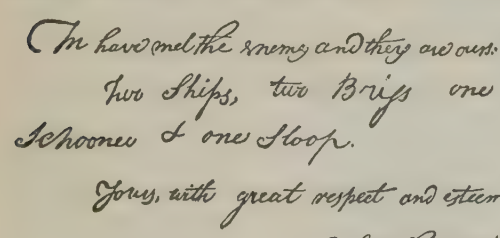
The Constitution won so many victories and was so little injured that the name "Old Ironsides" was given her. Twenty years afterwards the government decided that she was no longer seaworthy and must be broken up. Then Oliver Wendell Holmes wrote his famous poem, "Old Ironsides," beginning, "Ay, tear her tattered ensign down!" and so many were eager to save the ship that it was repaired and sailed the ocean for many a year. It is now, more than a century old, in the Navy Yard at Charlestown, Massachusetts. It is kept in good repair, and will, perhaps, last another hundred years.

Perry and his company of carpenters were at Erie, cutting down

trees as fast as they could to build a fleet. There was no time to wait for timber to season, and the ships were made from lumber that was almost fresh from the forest. The one that he chose for his flagship was named the Lawrence, from a brave officer who had fallen in a sea fight a year earlier. The last words of Lawrence were, "Don't give up the ship!" and this is what Perry put on his flag. The young captain had never seen a naval battle, but he went out boldly to meet the British fleet. Capturing a flagship is about the same on the water as taking the enemy's capital is on land; but even when Perry's flagship was shot so full of holes that she was ready to sink, he did not surrender. He and his twelve-year-old brother sprang into a boat with the eight sailors who still lived, and rowed to another ship of the fleet. There was a storm of bullets and cannon balls around them. More than one bullet went through the boy's cap, but they reached the vessel in safety. "Don't give up the ship!" swung out from the masthead, and in less than ten minutes the British fleet surrendered. Perry sent a message to the government, "We have met the enemy and they are ours." This victory cut the British off from further invasion of the Northwestern Territory.

Perry's victory on Lake Erie

PERRY'S FLAG



We have met the enemy and they are ours.
Two Ships, two Brigs one Schooner & one Sloop.
Yours, with great respect and esteem
O H Perry

COMMODORE PERRY'S MESSAGE
(By permission of Harper & Brothers)

The war was more serious than it otherwise would have been because the Indians of Canada united with the English, and their chief went to Alabama to induce the red men there to fight against the Americans. The Indians were suppressed by two men who afterwards became presidents of the

The Indians and the English

United States, General Harrison, who won victories in Canada and General Jackson, who was successful in the South.

The burning of Washington

When the war with France was over, England sent more soldiers and more vessels. Suddenly word came to Washington that fifty British ships were at the mouth of the Potomac. The city had no fortifications and was helpless. The invaders swept into the town, burned the Capitol, and even the Congressional Library, and took possession of the White House. Dolly Madison, the President's wife, saved the Declaration of Independence and a valuable portrait of Washington. Tradition declares that, like a good housekeeper, she also carried away to safety her work-bag filled with silver spoons. To destroy Washington gave no military advantage. The British said it was done because the Americans had burned Toronto. There was this difference, however, in the two acts: Toronto was burned by soldiers acting without authority and the United States disapproved of the deed, while Washington was burned under strict orders from the British government. Americans may well be ashamed of the destruction of Toronto, but they have no such act of barbarism to regret as burning a national library.

DOLLY MADISON
(From a miniature)

Attack on Baltimore

The British ships next appeared before Baltimore. All day the cannon thundered. On board one of the ships was an American

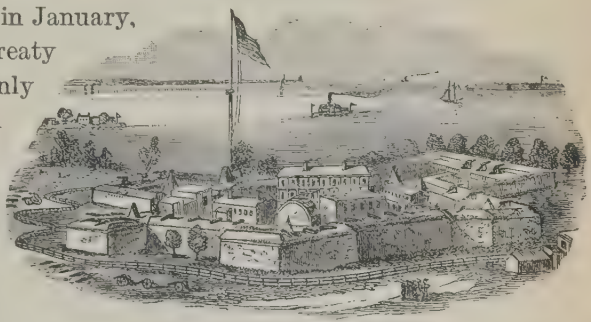
prisoner, Francis Scott Key. The cannonading went on through the night. He watched anxiously every "rocket's red glare," lest he should see that the American flag had been lowered. Dawn came, and the flag still floated. In his relief and joy, he wrote "The Star-Spangled Banner." It was printed at once; the air was a familiar one, and soon the song was sung from one end of the country to the other.

The Star-Spangled Banner

After more than two years of fighting, England planned to make a fierce attack upon New Orleans and so gain control of the Mississippi. General Jackson was sent to defend the city, and wherever he went something was usually accomplished. The American troops had had little experience, and they were only half as many as their enemies. The British soldiers were veterans, but their knapsacks, muskets, etc., were far too heavy for rapid movement. Both sides fought bravely, but the English were terribly defeated.

The battle of New Orleans

One especially sad fact about this battle, with its great loss of life, is that it was fought in January, 1815, two weeks after the treaty of peace was signed. The only way for news to come from England to America was by sailing vessel, and there were few that even with fair winds could cross the ocean in less than a month. This treaty said not one word about any rights of the Americans to buy and sell as they chose and did not mention the right of search, but after this, England never again attempted to interfere with American commerce or to search an American vessel. Before this war the United States had been looked upon



FORT McHENRY, BALTIMORE
(Where "the Star-Spangled Banner" of the song waved)

The treaty of peace

as a few millions of people who had banded together to free themselves from England. After the war it was seen that the United States was a nation, able to defend its rights, and to hold an honorable place among the nations of the world.

SUMMARY.

After the Revolution each colony thought only of its own gain. Congress had no power to enforce its laws. The chief thing in which all the states had a common interest was the Northwestern Territory.

A convention held in Philadelphia drew up the Constitution, which gave Congress the power to make laws, the President the power to enforce them, and the Supreme Court the power to interpret them.

In 1789 Washington became the first president of the United States.

The government obtained money by duties on imports, and friends by assuming the Revolutionary debts of the colonies.

The invention of the cotton-gin resulted in an increase in the production of cotton, which caused disagreement between the North and the South about duties, and encouraged negro slavery.

Our vessels were attacked by the French because of our refusal to aid them in a war against England. After we had captured many French vessels, France made peace.

In 1799 Washington died.

The Barbary pirates were suppressed by our warships.

The United States bought of France the land between the Mississippi and the Rocky Mountains, which was soon explored by Lewis and Clark.

The Embargo Act was passed in retaliation for the declarations of France and England which injured our commerce.

The War of 1812 was caused by England's interference with our commerce, and by her searching our ships and seizing our sailors.

American attacks on Canada failed; but American victories on Lake Erie and elsewhere kept the British out of our Northwestern Territory.

Our ships won many victories on the ocean.

The British burned Washington, but were defeated at New Orleans after peace had been made.

SUGGESTIONS FOR WRITTEN WORK.

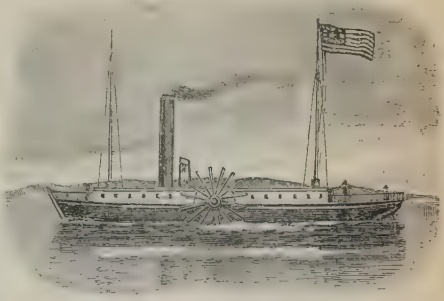
A sailor describes the search of an American vessel by the British.
Perry's brother describes the victory of Lake Erie.

XIX

THE WESTWARD GROWTH OF THE COUNTRY

1817–1841.

James Monroe was the next president. Soon after he was inaugurated he made a tour of the country to see the forts and navy yards. Traveling was easier than when Washington had to ride on horseback from New York to Boston, for a man named Robert Fulton had invented the steamboat. Steamers were already on the rivers and the Great Lakes, and before Monroe's term of office was over, Georgia sent one to Europe. Monroe had a joyful reception wherever he went. He wore the blue and buff uniform and the cocked hat of the Revolution. The old soldiers remembered that he had been one of them and gave him a comrade's greeting. One of the Boston papers called the times the "era of good feeling," and that described the condition of things so well that the phrase went throughout the country.



FULTON'S STEAMER, THE CLERMONT

The "era of good feeling"

In the southeastern corner of the land there was trouble. The Creek Indians of Alabama had sided with the British in the War of 1812, because they felt that the Americans were driving them away from their lands. They expected the British to secure the

Trouble with the Seminoles

land for them, and when this was not done, they were more indignant than ever. In Florida there were Seminoles, negro slaves who had escaped from their masters in Georgia, Spaniards, and a few English, all of whom were willing to unite with the Creeks against the Americans.

OSCEOLA, CHIEF OF THE SEMINOLES

Monroe sent General Jackson to subdue them, and he succeeded; but Congress was a little startled when it was known that he had paid no attention to the fact that Florida was Spanish soil, and that among the men whom he punished were both Spaniards and English. There might have been trouble if Spain had not been in need of money. The result was that she sold Florida to the United States. Our country then owned every foot of what is now United States territory east of the Mississippi. West of that river the vast tract called Louisiana was United States soil. Spain still owned what is now Texas and Mexico, but she agreed to give up all claim to the "Oregon Territory," which was the land north of California.

The Monroe doctrine

There was much talk about the Pacific coast just then, for Russia had taken possession of the land which we now call Alaska, and had begun to build trading-posts along the California coast. Other nations of Europe were looking for new territory in South America. Then it was that the President announced what is now called the "Monroe doctrine." It was that European nations could not acquire new territory in either North or South America, and that the United States would not permit any European country to "interfere with any independent American government."

The Americans were no longer confined to a little strip of land along the coast. There were twenty-two states, and two others

were asking to be admitted. The new states had been settled chiefly by colonists from the older ones. There were no railroads, and the only way for a family to "go West" by land was by wagon or on foot. The wagon most often used was called a prairie schooner. It was long and low, and was covered with white canvas drawn over great wooden hoops. The emigrants would ride slowly on day after day, cooking their meals in gypsy fashion over out-of-door fires, and sleeping in the wagon. They would pick out a good piece of land, build a log house, cut down the trees, plant corn and potatoes, raise sheep and cattle, spin, weave; and, if all went well, they would have a comfortable home, where the family would at least be sure of enough to eat and to wear. The emigrant would, of course, be wise enough to select land that was near a river, so that as soon as he had any produce to sell, it could be taken to a market and exchanged for things that he could not make. Other settlers would come, perhaps a village would grow up around his house; and he might become a rich man.

Going West

EMIGRANTS GOING WEST ACROSS THE PRAIRIES

This is what every emigrant hoped, and it is no wonder that so many went to the "far West," which then meant states no farther away than Ohio or Tennessee. One man in Pennsylvania reported that two hundred and thirty-six prairie schooners went through his town in a single month. Some of the emigrants had set out bravely on foot to find the happy land where the poorest

Numbers of the emigrants

CHICAGO AS IT WAS IN 1832

had enough. One man and his wife were seen in Pennsylvania on their way to Indiana, having already walked from Maine. They had a little handcart, in which were all of their possessions, and as many of their six children as were too young to make the journey on foot.[1]

These people came from all parts of the country, and an important question was arising because of the new settlements. Should slavery be allowed in the newly opened territory? The North said "No," not only because many were beginning to think slavery wrong, but because if there were more slave states than free states, their representatives in Congress would vote against duties, and this would hurt the northern manufacturers. The South said "Yes," fearing that if there were more

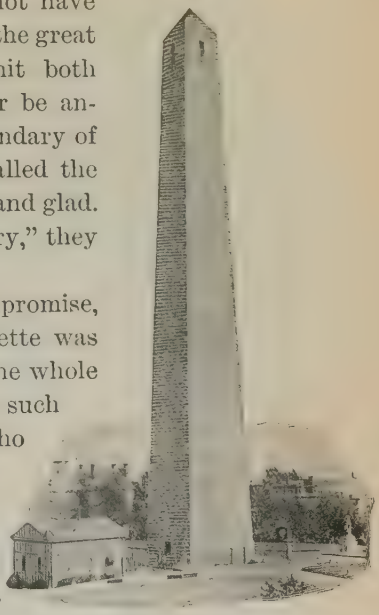
HENRY CLAY'S BIRTHPLACE, HANOVER COUNTY, VIRGINIA

[1] McMaster's *History of the People of the United States.*

free states, slavery might be interfered with. She hoped also to gain representatives enough to abolish duties on imported goods. Maine asked to be admitted as a state, but the South said, "No, we will not have another free state." Missouri made the same request, but the North said, "No, we will not have another slave state." Finally Henry Clay, "the great peacemaker," persuaded Congress to admit both states on condition that there should never be another slave state north of the southern boundary of Missouri, that is, 36° 30′. This act was called the Missouri Compromise. People felt relieved and glad. "There will be no more trouble about slavery," they said.

The Missouri Compromise

In 1824, four years after the Missouri Compromise, the United States "had company." Lafayette was invited to visit the country as the guest of the whole nation. Such rejoicings as there were, and such welcomes, not only from the old soldiers who had fought under "the boy," but from every one who loved his country and appreciated the help that Lafayette had given so generously to win its freedom. He visited each one of the twenty-four states, and was greeted everywhere as the friend of the nation. From each railroad train that comes into Boston from the north the tall gray stone monument that stands on Bunker Hill may be seen. Its corner-stone was laid by Lafayette, June 17, 1825, just fifty years after the battle, and many veterans were present who, as young men, had stood on that hill waiting to "see the whites of their eyes."



BUNKER HILL MONUMENT

Lafayette's visit

When Lafayette was ready to return to France, Congress gave him a generous sum of money and more than one half as much

land as there is in the District of Columbia. A new frigate was named the Brandywine in honor of the battle in which he was wounded, and this was sent to the mouth of the Potomac to carry him across the ocean.

STAGE-COACH

John Quincy Adams became president in 1825. When July 4, 1826, drew near, great preparations were made throughout the land to celebrate the fiftieth anniversary of the signing of the Declaration of Independence. There were speeches and cheers and music. Guns were fired and bells were rung. When night came, the country was ablaze with bonfires and illuminations. The use of gas was beginning to be common in some of the large cities, and its light was so much brighter than that given by candles and whale-oil lamps that it was looked upon as a marvel. Audiences would gaze with wonder and delight when the gas in a theatre or concert hall was suddenly turned up.

The fiftieth Fourth of July

The whole land was jubilant, but a few days later word came that on July 4, while the country was happy in its celebration of independence, two men who had done much to win that independence had died. They were Thomas Jefferson in Virginia and John Adams in Massachusetts. Grief took the place of joy, and black drapings were hung where such a little while before there had been only brightness.

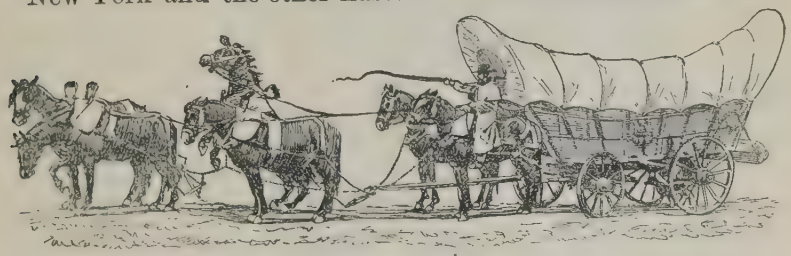
Death of Adams and Jefferson

Slow traveling

To-day the death of a famous man would be flashed over the world in a few minutes, but seventy-five years ago news traveled slowly, for there were no steam railroads and no telegraph. The only way that a message could be carried from New York to Pittsburg, for instance, was by a man on horseback or by stage-coach. When the people in Ohio wished to send their produce to market, they usually carried it in wagons to Pittsburg, and then it went by boat down the Ohio and the Mississippi to New Orleans. Goods sent from New York to southern Ohio had to be carried by wagon across Pennsylvania, or else by boat up the Hudson and the Mohawk, across Lake Ontario and a part of Lake Erie, and then down the Alleghany to Pittsburg.[1] The part of this journey that could not be made by water was made in great wagons or ox-carts.

AN OLD-FASHIONED CHAISE

New York and the other Eastern cities knew that there must



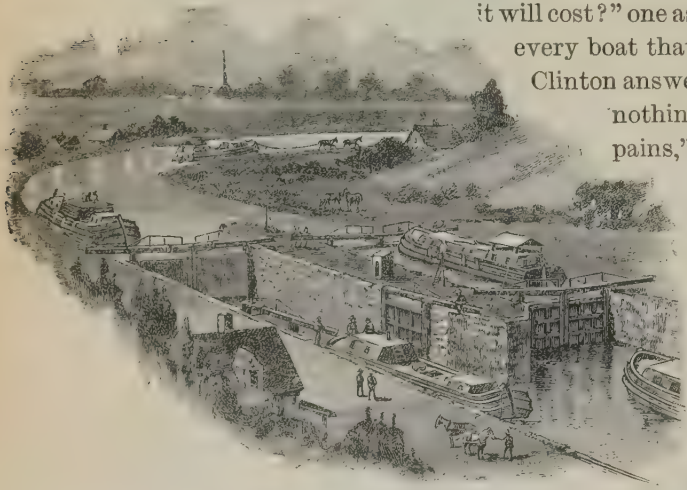
FREIGHT WAGON
(From an old freight bill)

The Erie Canal

be a cheaper way to carry goods to the West, or else the new states would make all their purchases in New Orleans and bring them

[1] McMaster's *History of the People of the United States.*

up the Mississippi in steamboats. It was proposed to dig a canal from Albany to Buffalo. There was no dynamite for heavy blasting and no steam machinery for digging. Every pound of dirt must be lifted by a man with a shovel. It was a great undertaking. Governor Clinton of New York was much interested in its success, and the people who did not believe in the canal called it "Clinton's big ditch." "How shall you get back the millions that it will cost?" one asked. "We will tax every boat that goes through it," Clinton answered. "You 'll have nothing but mud for your pains," another grumbled; but Governor Clinton kept bravely at work, and after eight long years the "big ditch" was done.



A CANAL SHOWING HORSES, TOW-BOATS, AND LOCKS

There was a great celebration in Buffalo, and the Erie Canal was formally declared to

Opening of the canal

be open. A cannon was fired, then another five miles farther down the canal, and so on all the way to New York city. Probably no news had ever before traveled five hundred miles so rapidly. Governor Clinton and others went on board some canal boats, fresh and new, and made gay with flags and streamers. Horses walking the "tow-path" towed the boats along to Albany. Then they went down the Hudson to New York city and out into the bay. Two kegs of water, brought from Lake Erie, were poured into the sea to show that Lake Erie and New York Bay were united.

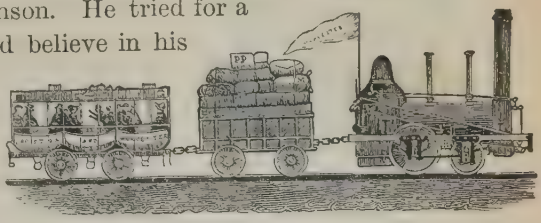
The canal was used so much that even the first year the tolls paid nearly twice the interest. Freight grew cheaper each year, and it was not long before one dollar would carry as much weight from Albany to Buffalo as fifteen had formerly done. Towns were soon built all along the canal. Other canals were dug, and each one of them made it possible for new towns to be built and new manufactures to be engaged in. There was such enthusiasm over canals that some people declared it would not be long before there would be a waterway from the Atlantic to the Pacific.

Enthusiasm over canal building

KEG BROUGHT THROUGH THE ERIE CANAL

Canal boats were cheap and safe, but their speed was only four miles an hour, and people began to question whether it would not be better to build railroads. The idea of a railroad was not new. Wooden rails had been laid in several places to carry stone or earth, and wagons had been dragged on these rails by horses; but the use of steam locomotives on railroads we owe to an Englishman named George Stephenson. He tried for a long time before any one would believe in his invention. People laughed at it just as they had laughed at the "big ditch." "What should you do, Mr. Stephenson," asked one man, "if your engine was going at full speed and a cow got in front of it?" "It would be very bad for the cow," said the inventor gravely. The new engines were tried in America. They went very well on level ground, but they could not climb a hill that was at all steep. The road must either go around the hill, or else there must be machinery at the top to pull the cars up by ropes. The speed was not so very much greater than that of a steamboat. The rails were of wood with strips

The early railroads



BOSTON AND WORCESTER RAILROAD TRAIN OF 1835

of iron on top. The passenger cars looked almost exactly like stage-coaches, and part of the passengers had to ride backwards. Improvements came rapidly. Every year the trains went a little faster, the roadbeds, rails, and locomotives were a little better. It was easier for people to go about the country. They learned new ways of doing things. They saw new sights and thought new thoughts.

Who shall pay?

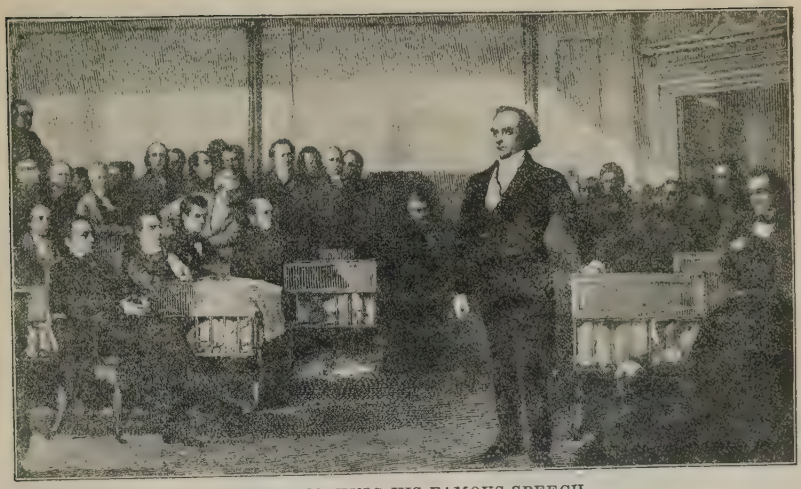
Men had to think new thoughts in those days, for several difficult problems were coming up to be solved. There were the two old ones, about slavery and about duties, and there was a new one, "Who shall pay for these canals and railroads?" The South said, "Let each state pay for its own"; the North said, "They are for the gain of the whole country, and therefore the whole country should pay for them."

ANDREW JACKSON

When it was time to elect a new president, Andrew Jackson, the sturdy old Indian fighter, was chosen. He was a straightforward, upright man, with a frank, cordial manner. He liked to please people and to do everything in the simplest way. His good-heartedness led him to do one deed that was an injury to the country. Resolute as he was, it was always hard for him to refuse a friend's request. When he became president, every one who had the least claim upon him begged for some position in the government employ, and he could not say No. The only way to find positions enough was to turn out the men who were then in office. This fashion of favoring one's friends is called the "spoils system" from a remark made in jest that "to the victor, belong the spoils."

Jackson and the spoils system

The hardest question that Jackson had to meet was in regard



WEBSTER MAKING HIS FAMOUS SPEECH
(From the painting by Healy in Faneuil Hall, Boston)

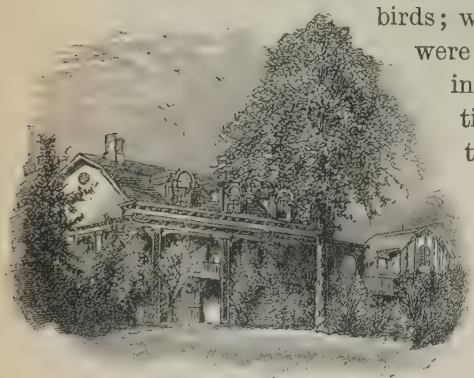
Nullification

to what was called "nullification," or making of no force. Congress voted to impose duties large enough to make imported goods cost more than those made in the United States. South Carolina said, "This is an unjust law, for it makes us poor while it makes the northern manufacturers rich. It is right for us to refuse to obey it, and therefore we shall nullify the act." This statement was made in the Senate. Daniel Webster replied in the famous speech that closes, "Liberty and Union, now and forever, one and inseparable." President Jackson did not like the large duties, but he meant that the laws of the land should be obeyed, and he sent forces to South Carolina to see that the duties were collected. Soon after this, Henry Clay, the "great peacemaker," persuaded Congress to lessen the duties, and there was no outbreak.

If a government is strong, and people feel safe and have time to devote to education, books are sure to be written. In the colo-

Our first great American writers

nial days few books were written in America whose reading still gives pleasure. Even after the Union was formed, people across the ocean used to say with a smile, "Not even the Americans read the American books;" but before Jackson's time three American writers became known whose works were read with pleasure on both sides of the Atlantic. They were Irving, Cooper, and Bryant. One great difference between their writings and those of most of the American authors that had come before them was that they did not try to imitate English writers. When Bryant described a landscape, he put in American flowers and trees and birds; while the American poets before him were inclined to put in larks and nightingales and primroses and "crimson-tipped" daisies, without stopping to think whether these birds and flowers could be found in America. Cooper had little to say about lords and princes; he liked best to write about the Indians of his own land. So it was with Irving. When he wrote "Rip Van Winkle," he did not make his hero live in some old English castle, but in a New York village; and Rip's strange adventures all took place on the New York mountains.



BRYANT'S HOME AT ROSLYN

Close of Jackson's term

In 1837 Jackson's term of office was over. He was the last President that had had anything to do with the Revolutionary War. Not one man was living who had signed the Declaration of Independence. The men who had made the country were dead, and the land was left in the hands of those that had come after them.

When Van Buren's name is mentioned, the first thought that comes to mind is "hard times," that is, times when no one seemed

to have money to pay his debts. The government had received for public lands and duties many million dollars more than it needed to use, and had deposited the money in various banks. These banks had loaned it to speculators, and to men who wished to build railroads or canals or to buy western lands. Suddenly the government decided to divide this money among the states, and ordered the banks to return it. The banks called upon the speculators and others to bring it back. Martin Van Buren

To do this at once was often difficult or impossible; for instance, men who had borrowed money to buy land where they expected a railroad would be built could not sell their land at a fair price till the road was completed, and had no money with which to pay the banks. Another trouble was that the government had declared that men who bought western land must pay for it in gold or silver; and, therefore, much coin had gone West. The banks united, and said that for the present they would not give coin for their bills, and they would make no new loans. No one knew what to-morrow's value of the paper money, or "rag money," as it was called, would be. Every one wanted coin, and whoever had any coin held on to it. Business firms failed, banks failed, mills stopped, work stopped, poverty and suffering were everywhere. The acts that caused the trouble came before Van Buren's term of office, but as the trouble itself appeared while he was president, it was always associated with his name. Hard times

After a while the money difficulties passed away, but there was another difficulty that was growing worse all the time, and that was the difference of opinion about slavery. Anti-slavery societies were formed in the North. William Lloyd Garrison had for several years been publishing a paper called the "Liberator," whose object was to arouse people to do away with slavery. "It is wrong," said these societies, "for one man to hold another as his slave." "It is right," said the South, "for us to hold the Anti-slavery societies

negro. He is happier and better cared for than he would be as a free man." The societies sent pictures and pamphlets throughout the land to persuade people that slavery was wrong. The South declared that these papers would make the slaves rebel, and demanded that the government should forbid such acts in order to prevent the danger of a slave insurrection.

Differences of opinion in the North

Not all northerners sympathized with the anti-slavery societies by any means. Probably most men in the North thought that it would be better if there were no such thing as slavery, but many believed that each state had the right to do as it chose in the matter, and some who would have done anything in their power to keep slavery out of a new state thought that no one had a right to interfere where it already existed. Anti-slavery papers were sometimes taken from the mails and destroyed. A hall in which an anti-slavery meeting had been held was burned, and the offices of the "Liberator" and other publications of the sort were raided.

SUMMARY.

During Monroe's term of office, the Seminoles were subdued, Florida was acquired, Spain gave up all claim to the Oregon Territory, and the Monroe doctrine was proclaimed. Emigration to the West increased, and the Missouri Compromise postponed the slavery trouble. Lafayette became the guest of the nation.

While John Quincy Adams was president, the fiftieth birthday of the nation was celebrated. Jefferson and John Adams both died on the day of the celebration.

The success of the Erie Canal brought about the building of many other canals and railroads, which made new towns and manufactures possible.

Jackson's enforcement of the law and a decreased tariff prevented nullification in South Carolina.

Irving, Cooper, and Bryant wrote the first great American books.

Van Buren's administration was marked by hard times and by increasing difference of opinion about slavery.

SUGGESTIONS FOR WRITTEN WORK.

Fulton's difficulties in making the first steamboat.
Governor Clinton tells why he favors the Erie Canal.
A ride on one of the early railroads.

XX

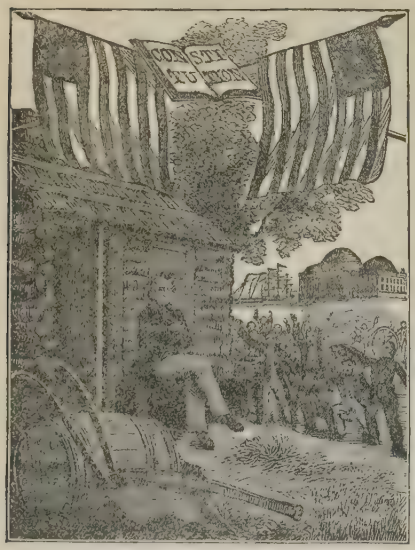
TROUBLE ARISES OVER SLAVERY

People suffered so much while Van Buren was in office that, although he was not to blame for their misfortunes, they wished to have a man who belonged to another political party. William Henry Harrison was chosen president and John Tyler vice-president. Harrison was a brave, faithful, upright man, who had always done his best and could be trusted to do well whatever he undertook. Just before the War of 1812, he had subdued the Indians at Tippecanoe in Indiana, and before the election took place his friends used to sing an absurd song, which ran: — Harrison and Tyler

"Oh, what has caused this great commotion
Our country through?
It is the ball that's rolling on
For Tippecanoe and Tyler, too;
And with them we'll beat little Van, Van, Van!
Van! oh, he's a used-up man,
And with them we'll beat little Van!"

Perhaps what helped Harrison most was a remark made by a newspaper that was opposed to him. It was that Harrison would feel more at home in a log cabin than in the White House. "That is just what we want," said his friends. "A man who can live in a log cabin, plough his own field, and build his own The "log-cabin candidate"

house — he's the man for us." Pictures of log cabins appeared on flags and medals. Real ones were drawn in the torch-light processions by stout horses or oxen. Mammoth log cabins were built for the meetings held by Harrison's friends, and the "log-cabin candidate" was elected.

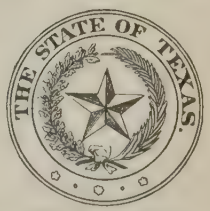


PICTURE FROM THE HARRISON CAMPAIGN ALMANAC

Tyler succeeds Harrison

Just one month after Harrison was inaugurated he died, and John Tyler took his place. The chief subject about which people were talking was the annexation of Texas. The land southwest of the United States which formerly belonged to Spain had become free and taken the name of Mexico. Mexico was willing that settlers from other nations should form colonies on her soil, and it came to pass that more than twenty thousand people from the United States settled on the land between the Red River and the Gulf of Mexico, called Texas. After a while the demands of the Mexican government became too severe to please the Texan-Americans. Just as Mexico had fought herself free from Spain, so Texas fought herself free from Mexico. She then asked to become a state, but for several years her request was not granted, and she was a state alone by herself. This is why Texas is called the "Lone Star State."

The Lone Star State



SEAL OF TEXAS

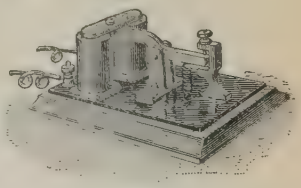
There were various reasons why people wished or did not wish

to have Texas admitted, but the most important one was the question of slavery. Texas held slaves, and if it became a state, the slave states would gain in power because they would have more votes in Congress. There was a long discussion in Congress, but finally the state was admitted. The South was triumphant; but the abolitionists, as those were called who wished to abolish slavery, set to work with more energy than ever.

The admission of Texas

People were not thinking about slavery alone. Many a man was at work on some invention that would be a gain to the country. The sewing machine had been invented long before, but it was a clumsy affair. Elias Howe succeeded in making machines that were practical. Rubber shoes had been used, but they were thick and heavy and they had a fashion of melting when they were left in a warm place. Charles Goodyear found a way to vulcanize the rubber so it would not melt. "Daguerreotypes" of buildings had been taken, but now a way was found to take pictures of persons. A vast amount of suffering was prevented by the discovery that by inhaling sulphuric ether the most severe operation would be painless. Samuel F. B. Morse worked for many years to find out the way to send messages by electricity. Even after he was sure that he could do it, so few believed in him that it was a long time before he could persuade Congress to give him the money to build a line of telegraph. At last the line was built, and the reverent message, "What hath God wrought!" was sent from Washington to Baltimore.

Great inventions



A TELEGRAPH SOUNDER

The first telegraph

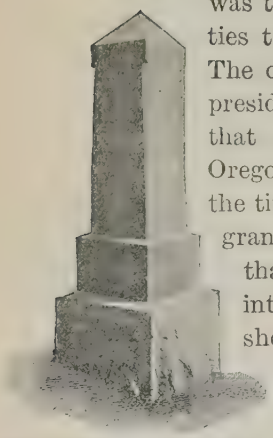
"Telegraph" means "far-writing," and it was a great mystery how writing could be done so far from where the message was given. Some did not believe any news that the telegraph brought until letters had come to prove that it was true. Some believed that the wonderful invention could not only carry the news, but collect it, and it is said that one woman objected to having a tele-

graph pole set up near her house because, as she declared, she did not want people all over the country to know what she was doing.

The Oregon Territory

While Tyler was in office, there was much discussion about what was called the Oregon Territory, that is, the land that now forms Oregon, Washington, Idaho, and parts of Wyoming and Montana, and extends as far north as Alaska. A Rhode Islander had discovered its chief river, the Columbia; a Virginian had explored the stream; and a New Yorker had sent out a colony. England, too, claimed the land, and for many years the two countries had held it in common.

The southern limit of Alaska is latitude 54° 40′, and when it was time to elect a new president, one of the political parties took for a campaign cry, "Fifty-four forty or fight." The candidate of this party, James K. Polk, was chosen president. When he was elected, he declared, "One thing that must be done while I am in office is to settle the Oregon boundary." In his inaugural address he said that the title of the United States to Oregon was clear, that emigrants were going from the east to the extreme west, and that the government ought to protect them and their interests. A little later he urged that an overland mail should be established to go to Oregon at least once a month.



MONUMENT AT CHAMPOEG, OREGON

(To commemorate the organization there on May 2, 1843, of the first American government on the Pacific coast)

Only a few years earlier it had been a disputed question whether it was possible to cross the mountains in wagons, and whether the Oregon country was worth the effort. Few had thought that much of it was of any value. In Congress a senator had declared, "For agricultural purposes I would not give a pinch of snuff for the whole Oregon Territory." The president's address did much to increase the number of emigrants

The trains of cattle drawing wagons loaded with furniture, tools, food, and clothing grew longer and more frequent. Many of these trains went to Oregon. It was a long journey; it took six months to go from the Missouri to the Willamette, but the very fact that it was farther from the east than any other part of the country to which emigrants had begun to go was one reason why so many went, for some people had the feeling that the farther they traveled, the more successful they would be.

The number of emigrants increased so that it grew more and more important to both England and the United States that the boundary line should be settled. Both countries were finding out that a part, at least, of the Territory was a rich, fertile land; but after all, the chief thing desired by each country was to get possession of the Columbia River and the inlet south of Vancouver Island. President Polk made it clear that this country would not give up any territory south of 49°. There was great excitement, and again the cry was heard, "Fifty-four forty or fight." After much discussion England offered to surrender all claim to the mainland south of 49°. This was agreed to, and our northern boundary, at 49°, was then completed. From the Lake of the Woods to the Pacific, it was marked by iron pillars placed one mile apart, and by piles of stones.

A MEXICAN BOY

Although there was no fighting with England, the United States did have a war while Polk was in office, and it came about because of the "Lone Star State," for Texas had at last been admitted to the Union. The Texans claimed the Rio Grande as their western boundary, but Mexico declared that the new state extended only to the Nueces. It was because of that strip of land, one hundred miles wide, lying between the two rivers, that the war took place.

The Mexican War

General Zachary Taylor was sent to the banks of the Rio Grande to defend the American claims. The story is told that

before the fighting began the Mexican leader said to one of the American officers, "If General Taylor will surrender, I can promise him good treatment." "General Taylor never surrenders," said the officer indignantly, and that speech became the watchword of the campaign. In these Mexican battles many a man fought whose name was to become familiar a few years later. Among these men were U. S. Grant, Robert E. Lee, and Jefferson Davis. General Taylor was uniformly successful along the Rio Grande. One division of the American forces conquered California, and another marched from eastern Kansas to California, capturing Santa Fé by the way. Finally General Winfield Scott made a wonderful march from Vera Cruz through the enemy's country to the city of Mexico. The city was captured, and the war was ended.

Campaigns of the war

DISPUTED TERRITORY OF THE MEXICAN WAR

One condition of peace was that Mexico should sell to the United States California and the land of which Nevada, Utah, Arizona, and part of Wyoming, Colorado, and New Mexico have been formed. American laws and customs were introduced at once into the new territory, and little attention was paid to the wishes of the people who were living on the land. Even if there had been no question that all American laws were better than Mexican laws, these changes were made so suddenly and so harshly that they brought about much suffering. Mrs. Jackson's story of "Ramona" was written to picture the life of the Mexicans at the first coming of the Americans into the territory.

Acquirement of new territory

Part of this land was California. It was known to have a

delightful climate and a fertile soil. After a while it was discovered that bits of gold were to be found in the beds of gravel on the hills and in the valleys. A man could fill a pan with earth, pour on water, wash the gravel over the top of the pan, and find in the bottom grains of shining gold.

Gold discovered in California

When the report of this discovery reached the East, there was a wild rush for the "Golden State." Some sailed around Cape Horn, some risked the deadly fevers of the Isthmus of Panama, others went across the country, in "prairie schooners," in ox-carts, on horseback, or even on foot. The overland route was marked not only by goods that had been thrown away when the horses became too weak to carry them farther, but by skeletons of horses and cattle, and by the headboards of hastily made graves. It was 1849 when these first gold-seekers went, and they called themselves the "Forty-niners."

The "Forty-niners"

SAN FRANCISCO IN 1849
(From an engraving published in 1855)

While the Forty-niners were hurrying to California, Zachary Taylor, who "never surrendered," was chosen president. In a few months he died in office, and Millard Fillmore, the Vice-President, took his place. Fillmore was followed by Franklin Pierce, and after him came James Buchanan. During the terms of office of these presidents the laws in which people were most interested all dealt with slavery.

The first one came about because so many Forty-niners went to California that one year later the territory asked to come in as a free state. Much of California was south of 36° 30′, and there was the same discussion that there had been in 1820 when Mis-

souri wished to come in as a slave state, but in 1850 it was even more bitter. In 1820 "the great peace-maker," Henry Clay, had proposed the Missouri Compromise, and now in 1850 he brought forward another compromise. "To please the North," he said, "let us admit California as a free state. To satisfy the South, let us pass a new fugitive slave law, and decree that if a slave escapes to a free state the United States government shall seize him and return him to his master." The third proposal that he made was, "Let us agree that the rest of the land which was bought from Mexico shall be free or slave territory, just as the people who may live there shall decide." Men who settled upon land to which they had no title were sometimes called "squatters," and this law allowing the settlers to decide whether slavery should exist in their territory was spoken of as "squatter sovereignty."

The compromise of 1850

The compromise was agreed upon, and California was admitted. Daniel Webster and many others who did not believe in slavery voted for this law, because they feared that the country would be divided if they refused. The slaveholder said, "This negro is my property. I paid for him, and I have a right to claim him wherever I can find him;" but when a negro who had made his escape appeared before the door of a man who believed that slavery was wrong, that man was much inclined to help the fugitive, even if the government did order that he should be given up. Anti-slavery men would hide these runaway slaves, and pass them on from one to another, concealed in all sorts of ways, until they were safe in Canada. This system was so secret and so successful that it was spoken of as the "underground railroad."

The underground railroad

People were talking of slavery more than anything else, and into the midst of the discussion came Mrs. Stowe's "Uncle Tom's Cabin," painting the life of the slave in the darkest colors. The North believed that it was a truthful picture and opposed slavery more than ever.

Uncle Tom's Cabin

GROWTH OF THE
UNITED STATES
Up to the Civil War
Scale of Miles
0 100 200 300
CANADA
OREGON COUNTRY
CONFIRMED BY
GREAT BRITAIN
TO THE
UNITED STATES
1846
OREGON
LOUISIANA PURCHASE
1803
MEXICAN CESSION
1848
MEXICAN CESSION
1853
TEXAS
ANNEXATION
1845
TEXAS
MEXICO
GULF OF MEXICO
PACIFIC OCEAN
ATLANTIC OCEAN
UNITED STATES
1783
NORTHWEST
TERRITORY
1787
GEORGIA
CESSION
1802
FLORIDA
PURCHASE
1819
Portland
Salt Lake City
San Francisco
Santa Fe
Chicago
St. Louis
Cincinnati
Washington
Richmond
Charleston
Jacksonville
Mobile
New Orleans
Galveston
Boston
Buffalo
New York
Philadelphia
Portland
WISCONSIN
IOWA
ILLINOIS
INDIANA
OHIO
KENTUCKY
TENNESSEE
MISSOURI
ARKANSAS
MISS.
ALABAMA
GEORGIA
FLORIDA
VIRGINIA
NORTH
CAROLINA
SOUTH
CAROLINA
PENN.
N. Y.
MASS.
MAINE
VERMONT
N. H.
CONN.
R. I.
DEL.
JERSEY
Missouri R.
Arkansas R.
Red R.
Rio Grande
Ohio R.
Mississippi R.
L. Superior
L. Michigan
L. Huron
L. Ontario
L. Erie
Longitude 102 West from Greenwich

Bleeding Kansas

The Missouri Compromise declared that all territory north of 36° 30′ should be free; but now, influenced by the friends of "squatter sovereignty," Congress voted that, although Kansas and Nebraska were north of the line, yet when they wished to come in as states, they might be free or slaveholding, as they chose. Then there was a struggle to win the new territories. Settlers from the slave states round about pressed into Kansas. Anti-slavery men in the North became colonists or gave money to help to send others. Both parties were sure that they were in the right; both were eager and excited. There were battles between them, and for several years there was so much bloodshed in the territory that it was called "bleeding Kansas." In a battle at Osawatomie, one of the fighters was John Brown, of Connecticut, who fought so fiercely that he was afterwards often called "Osawatomie Brown." The one aim of his life was, as he said, to wage "eternal war with slavery," and he had gone to Kansas to do everything in his power to make the territory into a free state.

The Dred Scott Decision

In 1857 James Buchanan became president; in the next four years there was one act that especially aroused the North and one that alarmed the South. The first was what was known as the "Dred Scott Decision." Dred was a slave. His master kept him in Illinois several years, and then carried him back to Missouri. In Missouri, Dred was flogged. He said, "No man is a slave in Illinois; therefore, when I was there, I became free, and my master must pay for flogging me." The case went from one court to another, and at last the Supreme Court of the United States, whose business it is to tell what the laws mean when people differ, said, "A slave is not a person; he is property, and his master may take him anywhere." The North cried indignantly, "That is not only protecting slavery in the states where it already exists, it is forcing slavery upon us;" and the opposition became even more determined.

John Brown's raid

Two years later came the act that alarmed the South. "Osawatomie Brown" had left Kansas to live near Harper's Ferry in Virginia. He thought that with the aid of a few friends it would be possible to fortify some place in the mountains where fugitives might be safe, and that after a while the slaves might be united in a general revolt. To get arms, he seized upon the United States arsenal at Harper's Ferry. A fight followed; John Brown was captured by United States troops led by Robert E. Lee, tried for treason and murder, and executed. He had broken the law of the land, and his punishment was lawful; but so much sympathy was felt in the North with his eagerness to free the negroes that his death strengthened the northern hatred of slavery.

HARPER'S FERRY

Seven states secede

In the South it was thought possible that John Brown was supported by many northerners. There might be a general revolt of the slaves, pillage, burning, and murder. The South was fearful of the horrors that might come, and more angry than ever with the North. It was near the end of Buchanan's term. Many southerners declared that the South would leave the Union if the next President should oppose slavery. "Must a state be kept in the Union against its will?" they asked. "Has it not a right to secede?" Abraham Lincoln was elected, and the watchword of his party was, "No more slave states." Seven states, South Carolina, Georgia, Alabama, Florida, Mississippi, Louisiana, and Texas

left the Union. Franklin's great-granddaughter was present when the senators of these seven states withdrew from Congress. Jefferson Davis was one of the senators, and he told her that the new government and the old would live side by side and be friendly to each other. "The North will never fight the South," he said. "You see how quietly they have let us go."

SUMMARY.

Texas freed herself from Mexico and was admitted to the United States. A quarrel over her boundary brought this country into a war with Mexico.

The telegraph was invented.

The conflicting claims of the United States and Great Britain to Oregon were settled, and the northern boundary of our country was marked.

California and a vast area of land east of California were ceded to the United States by Mexico. The discovery of gold in California caused a great westward migration in 1849. California was admitted as a free state, and to satisfy the South the Fugitive Slave law was passed. Squatter sovereignty did away with the Missouri Compromise.

The question of slavery became more violent. "Uncle Tom's Cabin" and the "Dred Scott Decision" aroused the North; while John Brown's raid alarmed the South. Finally, seven states seceded.

SUGGESTIONS FOR WRITTEN WORK.

Morse tells Congress how valuable the telegraph will be.

A day's ride with a western emigrant.

A Forty-niner describes his journey to California.

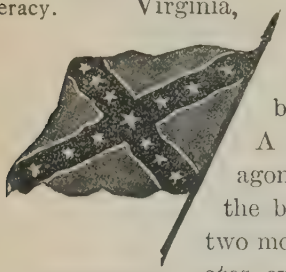
XXI

THE CIVIL WAR

1861.

The Southern Confederacy.

The seven seceding states formed a union, or confederacy, and in a little while four others joined them. These eleven were Virginia, North Carolina, South Carolina, Georgia, Florida, Alabama, Mississippi, Louisiana, Texas, Arkansas, and Tennessee. Jefferson Davis, who had fought bravely in the Mexican War, was chosen president. A flag was adopted which had a red field crossed diagonally by wide bars of blue outlined with white. In the bars were eleven stars for the seceding states and two more for Missouri and Kentucky, which the Confederates expected would secede because those states had sent representatives to the Confederate congress.



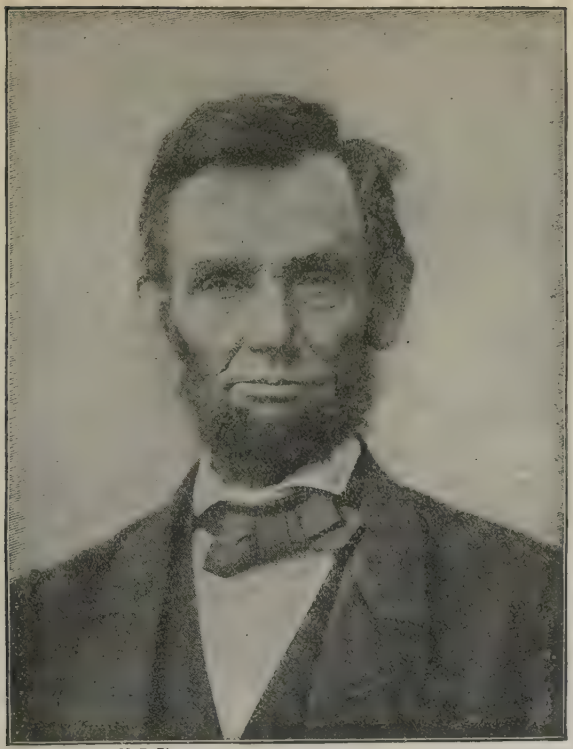
CONFEDERATE BATTLE FLAG

Lincoln's determination

Jefferson Davis had said that the northern states would not fight, and he had much reason to think so, for President Buchanan was not sure that the government had any right to force a state to remain in the Union, and many people in the North agreed with him. When Abraham Lincoln was inaugurated, he said that he should not interfere with slavery where it already existed, but that he should protect the Union and the property of the Union.

The attack on Fort Sumter

Among these pieces of property were the forts, one of which, Fort Sumter, was on an island at the mouth of Charleston harbor. In April, 1861, when the government at Washington attempted to throw supplies into it, the Confederates demanded its surrender, and when Major Anderson refused, General Beauregard fired upon it



Copyright, 1891, by M. P. Rice

ABRAHAM LINCOLN

(From an original negative made in 1864, when President Lincoln commissioned General Grant Lieutenant-General and commander of all the armies of the republic)

The Union men held out for two days. So much of the fort was on fire that the defenders had to lie on the ground with handkerchiefs over their mouths to keep from being suffocated. The powder was nearly gone. There was nothing to eat but salt pork. Then Major Anderson surrendered. The flag on the fort had been shot through and through. Anderson saluted the tattered banner with fifty guns, and the little company which had

Surrender of Fort Sumter

formed the garrison marched out with drums beating and colors flying.

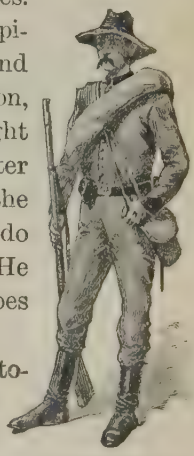
The first gun fired upon Fort Sumter aroused the whole country. Before that men talked about what might happen. Now something had happened, and every man in the land must stand for the Union or against it. Lincoln called for seventy-five thousand men to serve in the army, and more than that number offered themselves. Most people in the North supposed that the revolt would soon be suppressed, and Lincoln asked the men to serve for three months.

FORT SUMTER IN 1861

The country is aroused

The South, too, raised an army at once, and made ready to defend the border line of the seceded states. Richmond was chosen as the Confederate capital. If the Union men could take Richmond or the Confederates could take Washington, it would be a great gain to the victors, it might even bring the war to an end. Week after week passed. "On to Washington!" cried the Confederates. "Why does n't General Scott do something?" complained the Unionists. "He could fight in the Mexican War. Why does he stand still now? On to Richmond!"

A UNION SOLDIER

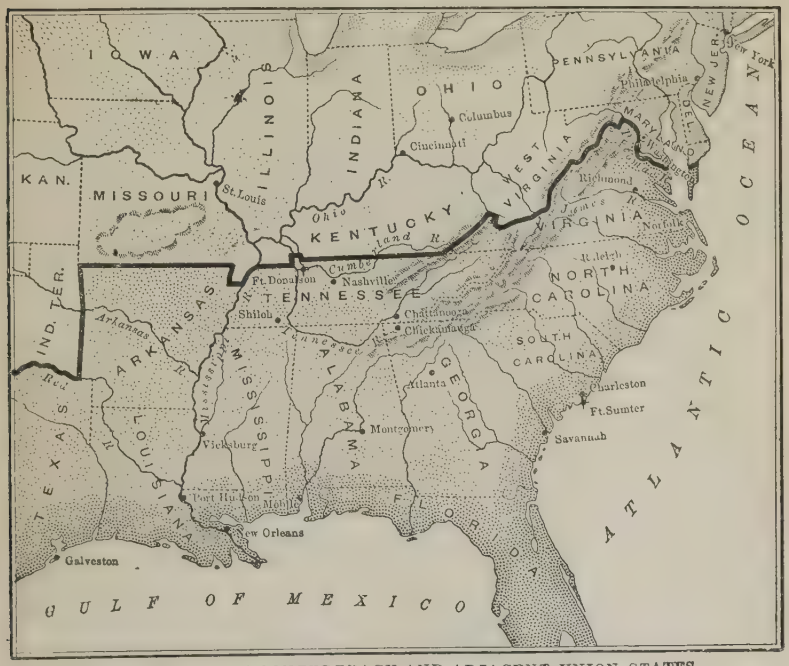


A CONFEDERATE

The two armies pressed a little nearer together. Neither was ready to fight, but each commander felt that he must pay some regard to the wishes of his people. In Virginia, not far from Washington, is a little river called Bull Run, and just beyond it is a railroad that runs from Washington

to the southwest. If the southern army held this railroad, they could bring men and arms and provisions from the South easily and quickly, and thus threaten Washington. The North meant to prevent the capture of the road, and that is why the first great battle of the war was fought near Bull Run. General Beauregard

Battle of Bull Run



THE SOUTHERN CONFEDERACY AND ADJACENT UNION STATES

had come from Charleston, and was in command of the Confederate forces. He had been educated at the United States Military Academy at West Point. Among his classmates was Irvin McDowell, and it was McDowell who stood on the other side of the little stream, leading the Union army. Another West Point graduate, General Jackson, was on the field, fighting for

the Confederacy. It seemed at first as if the Union men would win, and as they pushed forward upon Jackson, an officer shouted to his troops, "Look at Jackson and his men standing there like a stone wall." Soldiers always nickname their favorite commanders, and from that day the brave general was known among them as "Stonewall" Jackson.

Defeat of the Union troops

There was a fierce battle, and thousands of men were slain. The Confederates were victorious, and the retreat of the Union soldiers was a wild stampede. Men, horses, army-wagons, gun-carriages, sutlers' teams, dashed along the road in the maddest confusion, while tents, cannon, and provisions were scattered along the way. The two chief reasons for the Union defeat were, first, that the soldiers had expected to win the day easily; secondly, that they were "green," as Lincoln said, and had no idea of the training and obedience required of a soldier. General McDowell said that on the march to Bull Run it was hard to keep these untrained warriors from leaving the ranks to pick blackberries.

Making an army

After Bull Run it was clear that the conflict would be long and serious. Lincoln called for seven times as many men as at first. Another thing that was clear was that bravery alone would not make a soldier. The troops must be drilled. General McClellan spent week after week in training his men. In the autumn of 1861 there were thousands of *men* who wished to fight for the Union; in the spring of 1862 these men had become an *army*.

Blockade runners

The Confederates had felt almost sure of the favor and support of England, for English mills were using large quantities of southern cotton, and cotton could not be sent so long as there was war. A Union warship watched every important port, and a vessel trying to enter or leave the harbor was in great danger of being captured. Those that did attempt it were called blockade runners. The risk was so great that an enormous price was

charged for the goods that they carried; and before the war was over a pound of cotton that cost four cents in South Carolina could be sold for two dollars and a half in England. Two men were appointed by the Confederates to go to England and try to persuade both that country and France to help them. They were on board the Trent, a British mail-steamer. A Union captain obliged the Trent to stop, and carried away the two men. Thoughtless people throughout the North rejoiced, but Lincoln declared that this was exercising the right of search, and the men must be given up. They were set free with an explanation to England that their capture was not approved by the United States government.

The Trent affair

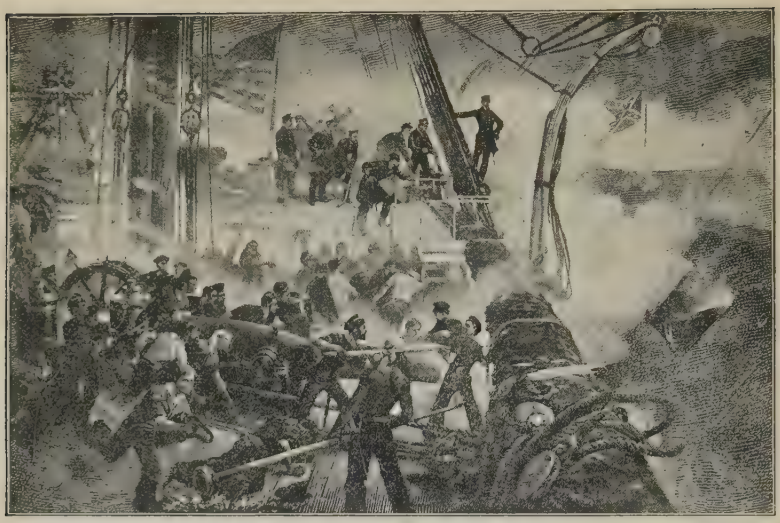
A CONFEDERATE BLOCKADE RUNNER
(This vessel, the A. D. Vance, was captured Sept. 10, 1864)

1862.

The United States government now planned to get control of the Mississippi. That would cut Texas, Arkansas, and most of Louisiana from the other Confederate states, and would make it easy to transport men and supplies from the North. The first step was to take New Orleans, which would prevent blockade runners from landing there arms and ammunition or anything else that would help the Confederates.

The capture of New Orleans

There was a naval officer named David Farragut who had gone to sea as a midshipman when he was only eleven years old. He had stood firmly by the Union, but some were afraid to trust him because he was of southern birth. The government believed in him, and gave him command of the fleet that would, it was hoped, succeed in taking New Orleans. The city was



AN AUGUST MORNING WITH FARRAGUT
(From W. H. Overend's painting showing Farragut in the rigging)

defended by two forts, by sixteen gunboats, by chains stretched across the river, and by rafts of logs. Flat-boats loaded with pine-knots or with cotton were set afire and let loose to drift down among the ships; but Farragut avoided the fire-boats, broke the chains, cut his way through the rafts, silenced the forts, and captured New Orleans. No one distrusted Farragut after this.

The Merrimac

While Farragut was on his way to New Orleans, a new sort of battle was being fought off the mouth of the James River. A Virginia navy yard had been seized by the Confederates at the beginning of the war. The Merrimac, a Union frigate taken at that time, was cut down to the water's edge and covered with a sloping roof of iron, pierced with holes for the cannon. This new kind of craft attacked the wooden vessels of the Union. One sank, another surrendered, a third, the Minnesota, ran aground,

and the iron-clad left her destruction until the morning. Should she be abandoned? Trains of powder were laid that she might be left and blown up. "Wait," ordered the captain. "And he did more than order," said one who was there. "He almost begged us to stay. We had heard about the Monitor, though we did not know whether the Monitor was coming or whether it would amount to anything if it did come, but a man does not like to leave his ship, and we stayed." Morning came, and with it the queerest little vessel that was ever seen. "A cheese-box on a raft," the Confederates called it. This was the Monitor, invented by a Swede, John Ericsson. It was made of iron, it carried two guns, and the "cheese-box" could be turned so that the guns might be fired in any direction. The battle was a severe one, but neither vessel was destroyed. Next day the Merrimac came out, but as the Monitor was needed to protect Washington, it did not engage in another battle. Later the Confederates were forced to evacuate Norfolk, and destroyed the Merrimac. This battle made it necessary for all countries to build iron-clad naval vessels instead of the wooden vessels that had been used.

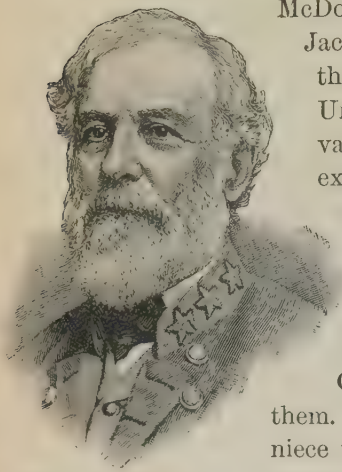
THE MERRIMAC

The battle

THE MONITOR

"On to Richmond!" was still the cry, and a plan was made

for McClellan to land near Yorktown, march up the Peninsula, as it was called, between the York and the James rivers, meet McDowell, and press on to Richmond. "Stonewall" Jackson was carrying on a brilliant campaign in the Shenandoah Valley, where small bodies of Union troops were stationed. Up and down the valley Jackson swept, making marches as unexpected as Washington's sudden moves, and so rapid that people called his army "Stonewall's foot-cavalry." It would not do to let McDowell and his troops leave Washington, for it was possible that Jackson might succeed in reaching that city, and therefore McClellan had to do as best he could without them. Richmond was alarmed, and Jefferson Davis's niece wrote to a friend, "Uncle Jeff thinks we had better go to a safer place than Richmond." After much fighting, McClellan was driven back toward the sea; and as there was still fear for the safety of Washington, he was ordered to come nearer the capital.



GENERAL ROBERT E. LEE

McClellan's attempt to take Richmond

There was reason for alarm, for the Confederates were evidently planning to carry the war into the North. General Robert E. Lee was now at the head of the Confederate army. He was the son of a famous Revolutionary officer, a West

General Lee

THE SCENE OF WAR NEAR WASHINGTON AND RICHMOND

Point graduate, and he had served with honor in Mexico. When the war broke out, he knew that a position in the Union army which might tempt any soldier, would be offered him, but Lee was not the man to do what he thought wrong for the sake of position. It was a struggle for him to choose on which side to stand, but he decided that as a citizen of Virginia he ought to follow the bidding of his state. This was the man who was pressing toward Washington. He thought that the people of Maryland would be glad to join him, and that with them he could march against the capital; but the Marylanders did not wish to join him. There was a terrible fight at Antietam in Maryland, and Lee withdrew into Virginia.

BRIDGE OVER ANTIETAM CREEK
(From Battles and Leaders of the Civil War)

Battle of Antietam

During the year 1862, the great gains of the Union forces had been the capture of New Orleans, the securing of the command of the sea, and the withdrawal of Lee from Antietam. On the Confederate side, Jackson had swept the Union troops from the Shenandoah Valley, and Lee had kept McClellan from Richmond.

1863.

Civilized nations have adopted a rule that private property must not be touched in war except in times of great necessity unless it is plainly intended to be used for military purposes,

Contrabands of war

as in the case of guns or ammunition. It is then called contraband, or illegal, and it may be seized by the opposing side. Wherever the Union army appeared, runaway slaves flocked to the camp, and what to do with them was a little puzzling. General Butler, a shrewd man with a keen sense of humor, finally solved the problem. When a "master" came to him and demanded the return of some runaway slaves on the ground that they were private property, the general said, "No. You will use them in making fortifications and in raising corn to support the Confederate army. They are contraband of war." After this, the negroes were often called "contrabands."

The Emancipation Proclamation

In time of civil war the President, as commander-in-chief of the army of the United States, can do very nearly what he thinks wise, provided the greater part of the people approve of his acts. When the first day of 1863 came, Lincoln signed a paper that is almost as famous as the Declaration of Independence. It is called the Emancipation Proclamation, and it declared that all slaves in those states resisting the Union government were free.

The governing class of England and the wealthy manufacturers whose mills were closed for the lack of cotton were eager for their country to aid the South by breaking the Union blockade. This might possibly have been done, had not the working people opposed. Closing the mills had thrown them out of work, and many of them were in need, but they were strongly opposed to slavery, and the Government did not venture to go against their wishes. It did, however, fail to enforce its neutrality laws and permitted blockade runners and privateers to be sold and fitted out in English ports. The most powerful of these privateers was the Alabama. She destroyed more than sixty American vessels, but was finally sunk by a Union ship.

The Alabama

The year 1863 began with the Emancipation Proclamation. In

May, the Confederates were victorious at Chancellorsville in Maryland; but they met with a loss that was worse than a defeat, for through a mistake "Stonewall" Jackson was shot by his own men. In the month of July there were two great northern victories. The first was at Gettysburg in Pennsylvania, for Lee again invaded the North. Up the valley of the Shenandoah he marched, across the Potomac, through Maryland, and into Pennsylvania. He planned first to take Harrisburg, then Philadelphia. He came to Gettysburg, lying in a peaceful valley, with orchards, green fields, farmhouses, and away to the west the blue mountains. Here he met the Union forces and fought the most terrible battle of the war. For three days it raged. One man out of every four — some say one out of every three — was killed, wounded, or missing. Such was the slaughter that men threw themselves on the ground and held up bits of white paper to show that they had surrendered. Lee was driven back, and retreated into Virginia.

Gettysburg

UNION LINE MEETING PICKETT'S CHARGE AT GETTYSBURG
(From the Gettysburg Cyclorama, by permission of the National Panorama Co.)

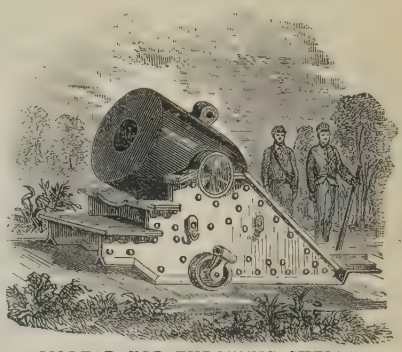
The day after the battle was spent by both sides in burying the dead. Four months later, a part of the battleground was set apart as a national cemetery. Lincoln made on the day of the dedication a short, simple speech, so full of thought and feeling,

Lincoln's Gettysburg speech

and appreciation of the honor due to those who had given their lives for their country, that it will never be forgotten.

The siege of Vicksburg

The second great Union victory was at Vicksburg. If that town and Port Hudson could be taken, the Mississippi would be in the hands of the Union; but it was not easy to take Vicksburg. The city stood on a bluff so high that shot could not be thrown to it from vessels on the river, while the city guns could easily sink any ship that attempted to pass. For three months General Grant and General Sherman tried to get into a position to attack the town. At last they succeeded, and the siege of seven weeks began. Day and night the shells were falling. People dug caves into the side of the hill to be safe from flying fragments. A lady who lived in one of the caves wrote that even the mules in the town seemed wild, and the dogs would howl madly when a shell exploded. Food was scanty. By and by it gave out altogether, and finally the brave, suffering, starving people surrendered. The Confederate flag was hauled down, and the banner of the Union run up. The whole Union army witnessed the scene, but not a cheer was given, says General Grant, so deeply were the courage and endurance of the people respected. One member of the victorious army was the war-eagle, "Old Abe," the pet of a Wisconsin regiment. He was in many a bat-



MORTAR FOR THROWING SHELLS

A UNION RIVER GUNBOAT

tle, and when the noise and confusion were greatest, he would flap his wings and scream as if war was his chief delight.

A few days later Port Hudson, which lies between Vicksburg and New Orleans, yielded, and the Mississippi was in the hands of the Union. This capture prevented the bringing of troops and supplies from Texas and Arkansas to the aid of the Confederate states east of the Mississippi. The Confederacy had now no way to communicate with Europe. It was shut in upon itself.

The Mississippi in Union hands

The greater part of the Confederate army was now divided between Virginia and the northwestern corner of Georgia. It was in Georgia that the hardest fighting of the last six months of the year took place. One battle was at Chickamauga. The Union forces lost, but it would have been a far more terrible defeat if the bold stand made by General Thomas had not prevented the rout of the army. The Confederates had had a "Stonewall" Jackson. Now the Unionists had a "Rock of Chickamauga," for this was the name that the soldiers gave to General Thomas.

OLD ABE

Several other battles were fought in that part of the country. The last one was called the "Battle above the Clouds." It took place on Lookout Mountain, and the heavy mist settled down so darkly that while the eager watchers in the valley could hear the sound of the cannon, they could only guess who were losing and who were winning. The Union forces won. "God bless you all!" came over the wires to General Grant from the weary, anxious President in Washington, for every victory brought nearer the coming of peace for which he prayed.

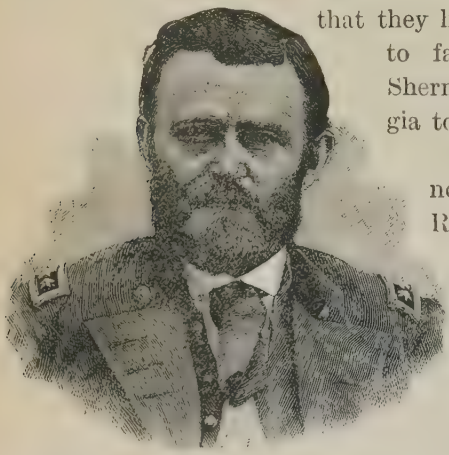
The end of 1863 came. During this year the Confederates had been successful at Chancellorsville and Chickamauga, but they had lost General Jackson. Lee had kept the Union soldiers from Richmond, but the repulse at Gettysburg had driven him from Pennsylvania. The Mississippi had fallen into the

hands of the Union, and Union troops had been successful in Georgia.

1864.

The plan to end the war

Two men now stood out as the most successful generals in the Union army, Grant and Sherman. Grant was put at the head of all the Union forces. The two generals formed a plan that they hoped would end the war. Grant was to face Lee and try to take Richmond; Sherman was to cut his way through Georgia to the sea.



Copyright, 1 91, by M. P. Rice

GENERAL U. S. GRANT
(From a picture taken in 1864 when he was commissioned commander-in-chief)

Grant went into Virginia from the north, swept around to the east of Richmond, then to the south. There were terrible battles. There were two days of fighting in a dark, gloomy forest called the Wilderness. The woods caught fire, and wounded men were burned to death in the blazing timber. There were explosions of trains of ammunition. There were dense clouds of the smoke of powder. Suffering men lay moaning. The underbrush was crackling in the fire. Men shot at their opponents in the darkness, or took aim by the glare of the flames. It is thought that about 30,000 men were killed. Neither side could claim a victory.

Battles of the Wilderness

General Grant pressed on till he was at Petersburg, south of the Confederate capital. Lee had not men enough to drive him away, but he could keep him from advancing upon Richmond. He even made the government fear another invasion of the North, for he sent General Early through the Shenandoah Valley toward Maryland.

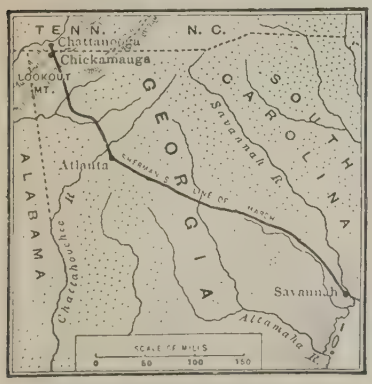
In the Shenandoah Valley

Sheridan marched out to oppose him. Early had once been within a few miles of Washington and had burned Chambersburg, but now his opponent went through the valley with orders to destroy everything which would feed man or beast, that there might be no more raids upon Pennsylvania. It was not long before he reported to Grant, "If a crow should want to fly through the valley, he would have to carry his food with him."

CONFEDERATE CAPITOL, RICHMOND

Sheridan was called to Washington, and when he returned to Winchester, he heard firing far away. He put spurs to his great black horse and galloped on. He met men running to the town. "General Early has attacked us," they cried, "and we are beaten." "Back!" ordered Sheridan. "We'll beat them yet. Face about!" he shouted to the retreating cavalry. They did face about. Early was driven away, and the disaster was prevented. This was the "Sheridan's ride" which the poem by that name has made famous.

Sheridan's ride

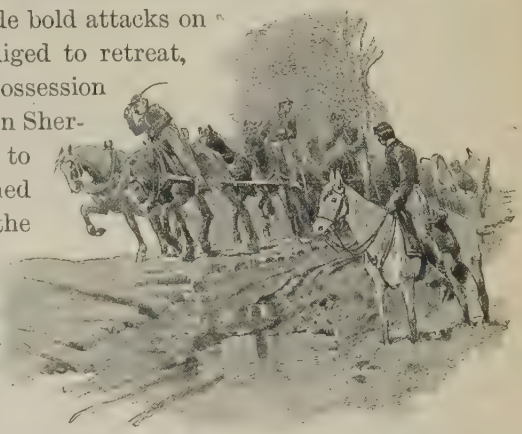


SHERMAN'S ROUTE TO THE SEA

But while Grant was before Richmond and Sheridan was in the Shenandoah Valley, where was Sherman? He was attacking the Confederate forces in northwestern Georgia. The Confederate general, Johnston, had not men enough to meet Sher-

Where was Sherman?

man, but he retreated after the masterly fashion of Washington in New Jersey. Sherman had to leave guards behind him to protect the railroads, and Johnston meant to continue the retreat until so many men had been left that the two armies could fight on equal terms. After two months of this retreating, the Confederate War Department gave Johnston's command to General Hood. Hood made bold attacks on Sherman, but was obliged to retreat, leaving Sherman in possession of Atlanta. Then began Sherman's famous "march to the sea." He marched southeast through the state in four columns, twenty miles apart, cutting a swath sixty miles wide. He burned Atlanta with its mills and foundries. He destroyed railroads and bridges, leaving a pitiful ruin behind him. The object of this march was not only to cut the Confederacy in two, but to destroy everything that would help the Confederates to carry on the war. Just before Christmas he entered Savannah, and sent to President Lincoln the message:—



CORDUROY ROADS IN SOUTH CAROLINA

I beg to present you as a Christmas gift the city of Savannah, with one hundred and fifty heavy guns and plenty of ammunition; also about twenty-five thousand bales of cotton.

W. T. Sherman.

So ended the year 1864. The Confederates had burned Cham-

bersburg, but Sheridan had devastated the valley of the Shenandoah, Sherman had made a wide path of ruin through Georgia to Savannah, and Grant had pushed on toward Richmond as far as Petersburg.

1865.

The year in which the war was to end began. Sherman had a hard march before him, and he would not leave Savannah until his men were rested. They were impatient to go on, and when he

The end draws near

WASHINGTON MONUMENT AND CAPITOL SQUARE, RICHMOND

rode about the camp, they would call out, "Uncle Billy, Grant is waiting for us at Richmond." Finally the march through South Carolina began. The streams were swollen, the swamps flooded, and the roads were often only long lines of mud. The men waded, they built bridges, they made "corduroy roads." At last they were in North Carolina. Both Sherman and Grant had many more men than the Confederate commanders near them, and they believed that one more battle would end the war.

Lee's surrender

The Union lines were well supplied with whatever was needed. The Confederates lacked clothes and provisions. Many of them were so weak from exposure and want of food that they could not lift their muskets to their shoulders. Lee's soldiers loved him and knew his ability as a general, but their families were in need, their cause was hopeless, and they deserted by scores. Lee could no longer protect the Confederate capital. "Richmond has surrendered," was telegraphed to Washington, and on the 9th of April Lee's whole force surrendered to Grant at Appomattox Court House, a little village west of Richmond. The two generals met to discuss terms. It was agreed that the Southern soldiers should lay down their arms and return to their homes in peace. The horses

Copyright, 1887, by the Century Co.

APPOMATTOX COURT HOUSE

(From a war-time photograph)

Grant left with the cavalry. "I hope this will be the last battle of the war," he said, "and they will need the horses to work their farms." Lee's men had been living for days on parched corn, and not very much of that. Grant's first action was to send a generous supply of food to the men.

This surrender was the real close of the war. On April 14th, just four years after the fall of Fort Sumter, Anderson was

Copyright, 1887, by The Century Co.

UNION SOLDIERS SHARING THEIR RATIONS WITH CONFEDERATES AFTER LEE'S SURRENDER

sent to take command of the fort a second time. The same old flag was hoisted, pierced with the holes of the first shots of the war. Late that evening, in the midst of the rejoicings of the defenders of the Union, the telegraph flashed over the country the message, "President Lincoln has been assassinated," and all the joy was turned into sorrow. He was shot by a man who fancied that he was avenging the "wrongs of the South." In reality he was murdering the true friend of the South. Only six weeks before, when Lincoln was made President for the second time, he said in his inaugural speech: —

The assassination of President Lincoln

AN ARMY CANTEEN

"With malice toward none, with charity for all, with firmness in the right, as God gives us power to see the right, let us strive to finish the

work we are in . . . to do all which may achieve and cherish a just and lasting peace among ourselves."

SUMMARY.

1861. The Civil War began with the capture of Fort Sumter. The Union forces were defeated at Bull Run. The capture of the Confederate commissioners on the Trent nearly made trouble with England.

1862. The Union forces capture New Orleans. The contest between the Monitor and the Merrimac took place. Jackson swept the Shenandoah Valley. McClellan failed to reach Richmond, and Lee withdrew from Antietam.

1863. The Emancipation Proclamation was signed. The Alabama did much damage to Union ships. The Confederates were victorious at Chancellorsville, but Lee was repulsed at Gettysburg. The Union forces gained control of the Mississippi by the capture of Vicksburg and Port Hudson. The Confederates were successful at Chickamauga.

1864. Grant pressed on to Petersburg. Early had burned Chambersburg, and to prevent such raids Sheridan devastated the Shenandoah Valley. Sherman marched through Georgia to Savannah.

1865. Lee was forced to abandon Richmond, and to surrender at Appomattox Court House April 9th. Four years from the day when Fort Sumter fell President Lincoln was assassinated.

SUGGESTIONS FOR WRITTEN WORK.

A soldier writes about the attack upon Fort Sumter.

A boy describes the siege of Vicksburg.

Two sailors on the Minnesota discuss the possible coming of the Monitor.

XXII

THE LATTER YEARS OF THE CENTURY

After the war, the government had to decide a difficult question. This was, "Will it be safe to allow the states that wished to leave the Union to send representatives to Congress and help make the laws for the country?" Lincoln's belief was, "No state *can* leave the Union. Some persons have raised an insurrection, but this has been suppressed. These states as states have not forfeited their right to send representatives." The position of the seceded states

THE WHITE HOUSE
(The official residence of the President as it appears to-day. The corner-stone was laid by Washington, Oct. 13, 1792)

When Lincoln died, the Vice-President, Andrew Johnson, became president. His belief was almost the same as Lincoln's, but where Lincoln would persuade men, Johnson would try to compel them, and all through his term of office there were quarrels between him and Congress, and many of the laws made at that time were made not with the President's consent, but in spite of his opposition. Andrew Johnson

An addition was made to the Constitution which is known as the Thirteenth Amendment. It forbids slavery in the United States or in any place governed by the United States. A law The Thirteenth Amendment

was passed requiring every man who wished to hold office in the South to take what was called the "iron-clad oath," declaring that he had taken no part in the war. This was an unwise demand, for almost every respectable man in the seceding states had taken part in the war; and the result of the act was that worthless men from the North persuaded or bribed the negroes to vote them into office. These men were called "carpet-baggers," because they usually had no property, and often no baggage except a carpet-bag. For a considerable time the northern adventurers and the ignorant negroes were in power in the South.

Carpet-baggers

THE GREAT EASTERN LAYING THE ATLANTIC CABLE

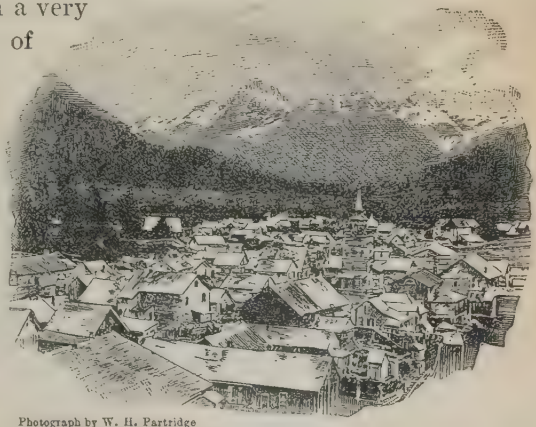
In order to send representatives to Congress, the Confederate states had been obliged by the government to grant the negroes the right to vote; but it was not long before the whites had the power in their own hands again, for in many places they would either frighten the negroes or bribe them, and so keep them away from the polls. United States troops were then sent South to protect the negroes in their right to vote and to support the men who had been lawfully elected; but the soldiers did not like this duty, the whites were angry, and the negroes often suffered more than before the troops came. Matters were made a little better by the pardoning of those Confederates who had taken part in the war, and restoring to nearly all the right to hold office. Though there are even now some hard questions to settle about the negroes, it is probable that very few men in our country, even in the South, would be willing to have the days of slavery return.

The negro vote

In 1866, while Johnson was still in office, Europe and America came nearer together. It took Columbus ten weeks to cross the Atlantic. The Pilgrims spent nine weeks in sailing from England to Massachusetts. In 1812, even a swift sailing vessel needed a month. Before the Civil War, the invention of steamboats had made it possible to send a message from England to America in ten or eleven days. A persevering man named Cyrus W. Field was now convinced that a telegraph wire might be laid across the Atlantic Ocean. The first attempt failed, the second failed, the third time all went well, but in a few days the cable broke. Field's money was gone, and his friends had no more that they wished to invest. At last Congress voted to help him. This time the cable succeeded. The wire was laid from Ireland to Newfoundland, and instead of the New World and the Old being ten weeks apart, whatever was done in one continent could be known in the other in a very few minutes. Whittier wrote of this new wonder: —

The Atlantic cable

"And round the world the thought
of all
Is as the thought of one."



Photograph by W. H. Partridge

SITKA, ALASKA

So it was that in Johnson's time the Atlantic grew narrower; but at the same time the United States grew wider, for Alaska was bought of Russia. Every time that the country has bought a piece of land, there have been citizens who opposed the purchase for one reason or another; and when Alaska was bought, some declared that it was a foolish, extravagant deed, that the country could "keep

The purchase of Alaska

house" without a "refrigerator." This "refrigerator," however, is just the place for fur-bearing animals, and in a few years the fur companies had paid for the right to collect furs much more than Alaska had cost. The recent discovery of gold in the Klondike district of Alaska has greatly increased the value of this possession.

The Alabama claims

Few were pleased with Johnson's management, and in 1868 General Grant was elected to succeed him. While Grant was in office, an important war question was settled in regard to the "Alabama claims," whether or not England ought to pay for the damage that the Alabama and other privateers built in that country had done to American shipping. For less cause than this, nations have fought long and bloody wars, but both countries agreed that the matter should be left to five men who would not favor either party. The men met at Geneva in Switzerland. They decided that England should not have allowed the boats to be built, and that she must pay to the United States fifteen and one half million dollars to make good the harm that they had done.

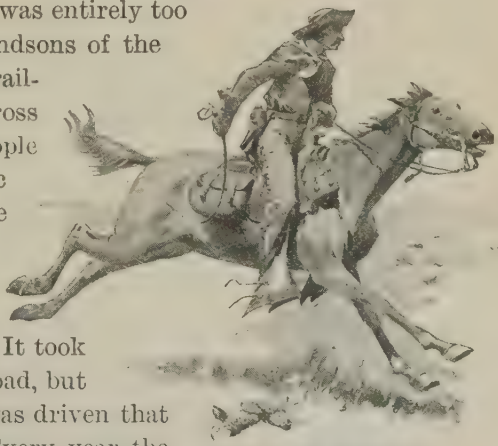
THE CONFEDERATE CRUISER ALABAMA
(From Official Records of the Union and Confederate Navies)

The Atlantic cable had brought Europe nearer to America, but the Americans had felt for many years that eastern and western America ought to be joined together. Gold and silver had been found east of the Rocky Mountains. Emigrants were going westward by thousands. There were railroads as far as the Missouri, but no regular way of sending letters or goods from the Missouri to the "far

Travel in the far West

West," now that this "far West" had moved from the Mississippi to the Pacific. The days of the postrider returned, and the "pony express" was introduced. Each mail carrier rode seventy-five miles, finding a fresh horse awaiting him every twenty-five miles. Then another man took the mail and galloped away. The next plan for carrying mail and passengers was by stage-coach; but while in Revolutionary days this would have been thought a luxurious way to travel, it was entirely too slow for the sons and grandsons of the Revolutionary heroes. A railroad ought to be built across the continent, so the people said, and the Union Pacific Railroad was begun. There were mountain ranges to be climbed, vast expanses of prairie to be crossed, and rivers to be bridged. It took seven years to build the road, but at last the golden spike was driven that marked its completion. Every year the trains go a little faster, and to-day one can cross the continent in less time than it would have taken the New Yorker of a century earlier to go to Boston and return.

The Union Pacific Railroad



"THE PONY EXPRESS"

The time soon came when it was natural to look back a century, for the hundredth anniversary of the days when the thirteen colonies were becoming a nation was at hand. In 1873 a tea-party was given in Philadelphia in memory of the Boston Tea-party of 1773. Lowell wrote a poem about the fight at Concord bridge, and the men —

The Centennial

"Who did great things, not knowing they were great."

One event after another was commemorated in song or in cele-

bration; but the great celebration came in 1876, the hundredth birthday of the nation. The Declaration had been signed in Philadelphia, and there the Centennial Exposition was held. All the nations of the world were invited to come to the celebration of the United States, and to bring specimens of what they could make or produce. One guest was the war-eagle, "Old Abe." The exhibition was most interesting, and it was a great help to our manufactures, for it gave us new ideas, and taught us new methods. The United States had no need to be ashamed of her own exhibit, for although she was the youngest nation represented, her list of recent useful inventions was longer than that of any other country.

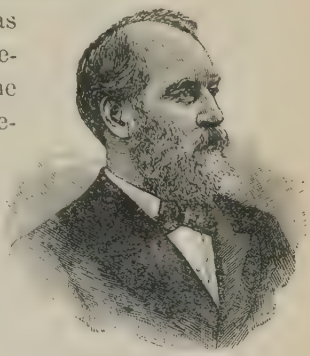
Greenbacks become as good as gold

In 1877 Rutherford B. Hayes became president. There was no important treaty while he was in office, there was no war and no discovery of gold, but a great event took place, for the treasurer of the United States announced that he was ready to exchange gold for "greenbacks." Just as in the Revolution the colonies issued paper money, so in the Civil War, when the government needed money, it issued bills, called "greenbacks," because the backs were printed with green ink. These bills were only the promise of the government to pay in gold or silver the amount named, and people knew that if the government should fall, they would never be paid. When the Union won a battle, the value of the greenbacks would rise, but if the Union lost, it would fall; and at one time it cost nearly three dollars in greenbacks to buy one dollar in gold. The government needed so much money during the war that a clock ticking sixty times a minute would

THE TREASURY BUILDING, WASHINGTON

have to run for more than ninety years before it could tick off, once for every dollar, the money borrowed. After the war, the United States began straightway to pay the debt; the greenbacks rose in value, and when finally the Secretary of the Treasury offered to give gold in exchange for greenbacks, people did not care to accept the offer, because the promise of the United States had become literally "as good as gold." Paying for the war

In 1881 James A. Garfield was elected president. A few months later he was shot, and Chester A. Arthur, the Vice-President, became president. This murder was partly due to a mistake made fifty years before by honest, faithful Andrew Jackson. The kind-hearted old warrior could not bear to refuse a friend who asked for a position, and to make room for these friends he turned out large numbers of those who were in office. This act grew into a custom. Every man who had tried to help elect the successful candidate thought he ought to have the reward of a government position. Hayes did not believe in this custom, and Garfield did not. Men who had voted for Garfield expected the usual reward, and were angry when it was not given them. It was one of these disappointed seekers after office who shot President Garfield.

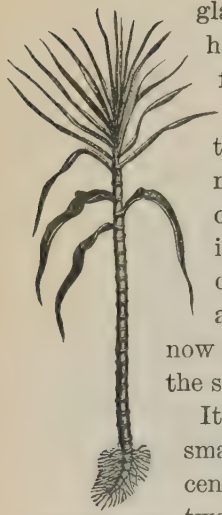


JAMES A. GARFIELD
(Died September 19, 1881)

This crime aroused Congress, and a law was made requiring many offices to be filled only by men who had successfully passed an examination. Another law, which applied to many thousand subordinate positions, provided that men who were working for the government well and faithfully should not lose their places when the party that appointed them went out of power. These laws were a long step in the direction of justice and fairness. They were passed while President Arthur was in power, so that Civil Service Reform

his term of office was marked by the beginning of what is called Civil Service Reform.

It was at this time that two expositions somewhat like the Centennial were held in the South, and the whole country was glad to see the prosperity of the southern states. The South had feared that the negroes would not work if they were free, but now it was proved that far more cotton was raised in proportion to the number of the negroes than before the war. More tobacco and sugar were also raised and much more corn and wheat. Manufacturing was now carried on in the South. The southerners were also looking below the surface of the ground as they had never done before; and, behold, there were great beds of coal and of iron. Cotton seed used to be thrown away, but now every state that raises cotton receives a large income from the sale of the oil that is pressed out of the seed.



SUGAR-CANE

It was in Arthur's time that a great change was made in a small thing. A law was passed that instead of asking three cents for a letter stamp, the government should charge but two. This law applies to all land owned by the United States, and that is why we can send a letter to the Philippines for two cents, while it costs five cents to send one to Europe.

Two-cent postage

After Garfield was shot and all knew that there was little hope of his recovery, the Vice-President also became seriously ill. There was nothing in our Constitution to decide who should become president if both died; but under Grover Cleveland, the next President, a law was made that if both the President and Vice-President should die, the Secretary of State should rule, and if he died, the Secretary of the Treasury should take his place, and so on through the cabinet. As the cabinet is made up of men chosen by the President, they would be likely to carry out his ideas and the wishes of the people who had elected him.

Succession to the presidency

While Cleveland was in office the Chinese were forbidden to enter the United States. Our country is so large that for many years it did not occur to Americans to shut out any one who wished to come in, but after a while it was found that some of the European states were sending paupers across the ocean, because it was cheaper to pay their fare than to support them at home. This was forbidden, and the government began to look a little more closely at the kinds of people who were landing on our shores. It was found that the Chinese differed from other immigrants in two respects. One was that they were willing to work for very small wages; and the workingmen of the Pacific coast said, "There are so many Chinese, and they work so cheap, that employers are refusing to pay us the wages that we have been receiving." The other difference was that while most men from other nations would stay in the United States and become citizens, the Chinese would stay only until they had made a certain amount of money and would then go home, carrying their money with them. A law was passed forbidding the Chinese to come into the land. Many persons thought that this law ought not to be made, because we had a treaty with China allowing the Chinese the same rights as other nations, but the Supreme Court decided that Congress had a right to say who should be allowed to enter the land.

The Chinese are shut out

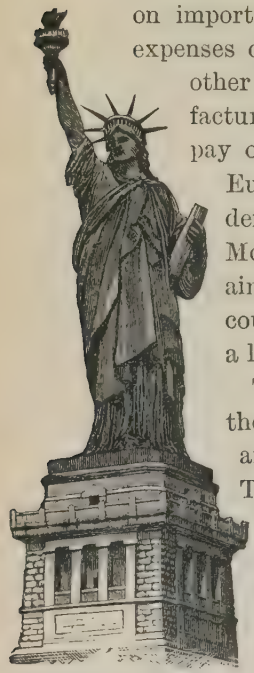
France had not forgotten her old friendship of a century earlier, and in token of this and of her respect for the United States, she presented the country with a colossal statue of Liberty. It stands on an island in New York harbor. It is so large that a room in the head of the figure will hold forty persons. In one hand is a torch which may be lighted by electricity.

The statue of Liberty

Cleveland's term of office expired in 1889, and he was succeeded by Benjamin Harrison, the third man by the name of Harrison who has been famous in our country's history. One

The McKinley tariff

signed the Declaration of Independence; his son, nicknamed "Tippecanoe," was elected president in 1841; and in 1889 the grandson of "Tippecanoe" became president. In 1841 there was much discussion about the tariff. One party said, "The duty on imported goods ought to be just high enough to pay the expenses of the government, and then prices will be low." The other said, "If imported goods are too cheap, our manufacturers will either go out of business or else they will pay our workmen no higher wages than the workmen in Europe receive." When Benjamin Harrison became president, people were discussing this same question. William McKinley, of Ohio, proposed in Congress a bill whose aim was to impose a high duty upon imported goods that could be manufactured in this country. This bill became a law.



STATUE OF LIBERTY
(Designed by Bartholdi and presented by France to the United States. It was completed in 1886)

The right was also given to the President to change the duty on certain articles, if the country sending those articles should impose unfair duties upon our products. This principle was called reciprocity, and by this means we could be sure of fair treatment, for we had become so large and so rich a nation that other nations were eager to win the privilege of selling their goods in this country.

Millions of people from Europe had come to make their homes in America. Instead of thirteen little colonies clinging to the Atlantic coast, our nation spread from the Atlantic to the Pacific, and great cities had sprung into life where half a century earlier there had been only a wilderness. In the movement of population to the westward there had sometimes been trouble with the Indians. They were here first, but most people have come to feel that roaming over a land does not give a claim to it, and that civilized

Indian troubles

nations have a right to take possession of "wild land." The Indians were gathered into tracts called reservations, in places where it was thought no white men would wish to live; and then as these tracts became valuable, the Indians were moved, not once, but many times. It is no wonder that they tried to resist, and that there were bloody massacres.

The opening of Oklahoma

In the year that Benjamin Harrison became president, the Indians were moved from Oklahoma, and one April day there was a strange scene acted on the border of the new territory. Thousands of men had gathered together from all parts of the country. Just at noon a bugle sounded; men ran, horses galloped, wagons swayed wildly to and fro. Everybody was frantically struggling to get possession of a bit of land, for the government had agreed that whoever was first on a lot might have it for his own on payment of a small sum, much less than the land was worth. This was so unfair a way to grant property that when the time came to open another territory to settlers, the plan was tried of allowing them to draw lots for the pieces of land.

ARAPAHOE CAMP, INDIAN TERRITORY

Civil Service Reform

After Harrison's term of office was over, Cleveland was again elected. In his first term he had done all that he could to help on Civil Service Reform, and during this second term he succeeded in putting many more offices under the merit system.

Before Cleveland's second election there was much discussion

The Columbian Exposition

about the best way to celebrate the four hundredth anniversary of the landing of Columbus. In 1876 the Centennial had celebrated the one hundredth anniversary of the Declaration of Independence, and it was now decided to hold an exposition in Chicago. The buildings of the exposition were exceedingly beautiful. So many of them were white that they were known as the "White City." In Chicago there were more than a million inhabitants, but many a man went to the Columbian Exposition, as it was called, who could remember when the city consisted of a fort and a few little huts. The celebration should have been held just four hundred years after the coming of Columbus, but the plan was not made early enough, and the doors could not be opened until 1893.

THE PERISTYLE AND FRENCH'S STATUE OF LIBERTY AT THE COLUMBIAN EXPOSITION

SUMMARY.

An amendment to the Constitution abolished slavery, and the negroes were enfranchised. After some delay, representative government was completely restored to the South.

Before 1876, the first Atlantic cable was laid; Alaska was purchased; England paid for the damage done by the Alabama, the dispute being settled by arbitration; and the Union Pacific Railroad was built.

Between the Centennial and the Columbian Exposition, our "green-backs"

became as good as gold; Civil Service Reform was carried out; Chinese laborers were excluded; a tariff for protection as well as revenue was imposed; and much land in the West was thrown open to settlers.

SUGGESTIONS FOR WRITTEN WORK.

One of the unsuccessful men describes the opening of Oklahoma.
Why should the landing of Columbus be celebrated?

XXIII.

THE UNITED STATES AS A WORLD POWER

The next president was William McKinley, the Ohio congressman whose plans for the tariff had been adopted seven years before. Forty-five states had been admitted to the Union, business was flourishing, the crops were large, and throughout the country there seemed to be good reason to expect a peaceful, prosperous time.

A hopeful outlook

One hundred miles off our coast, however, there was trouble, and it was soon plain that this trouble would affect the United States. Cuba belonged to Spain, and the island had been ruled so harshly that the Cubans had tried many times to free themselves from Spanish control. Soon after McKinley became president, they tried again and fought more desperately than ever. Spain could not suppress the revolt, and her commanders treated the Cubans so savagely that the United States believed it was time to interfere. Another reason for interference was that the Cubans and their friends were trying to fit out vessels in the United States to carry arms and supplies to the island. The only way to prevent this was for our government to keep ships sailing up and down our long coast, and the expense of such patrolling was very great. A third reason was that many Americans owned property on the island, and this war was breaking up their business

and causing them much loss. To protect them if need should come, the United States battleship Maine was anchored in the harbor of Havana. It was blown up. There was suspicion that Spaniards had caused the disaster. Spain had shown herself unfit to rule over Cuba, and war was declared.

Copyright, 1899, by J. C. Hemment

THE MAINE ENTERING HAVANA HARBOR
(Morro Castle appears on the right)

The Spanish fleet in the East destroyed

Spain was supposed to have a formidable navy, but if this could be destroyed, she would be powerless. One of her fleets was in the Pacific, in the harbor of Manila, the chief city of her Philippine colonies. Commodore Dewey was off the coast of China in command of an American fleet of six warships. The order came to him, "Capture [Spanish] vessels or destroy." Mines that would explode at a touch were scattered about Manila harbor, but Dewey steamed in one night, and destroyed ten Spanish warships and one transport without losing a man. The power of Spain in the Pacific vanished in a day.

THE PHILIPPINE ISLANDS

Spain then sent a fleet across the Atlantic. The United States vessels kept close watch, and it was

learned that the Spaniards had gone into Santiago de Cuba for coal. An American fleet guarded the mouth of the harbor where the Spanish ships were "bottled up," and American soldiers were sent to capture the town. There were white troops and negro troops. There were men who had fought for the Union, and there were men who had fought against the Union. One interesting regiment commanded by Colonel Leonard Wood had been raised by Lieutenant-colonel Theodore Roosevelt. He had graduated at Harvard, had lived on a western ranch and in New York city. He was an enthusiastic student and had written many books. He had also tamed vicious broncos, pursued thieves, been at the head of the New York police commission, and was, at the beginning of the war, Assistant Secretary of the Navy. His regiment was made up of "cowboys" from the West, policemen, millionaires, men who had fought more than one wild battle with the Indians, and men who knew far more about dancing than fighting. In one respect they were all alike, for every one of them was a brave man, and was ready to follow "Teddy," as they nicknamed their leader, into danger or death. Some one called them the "Rough Riders," and they were rarely spoken of by any other title. All these men were in Cuba. An attack was

Fighting at Santiago de Cuba

The Rough Riders

THE WEST INDIES

A ROUGH RIDER
(From a photograph of Captain Kane)

Victory at Santiago

made upon Santiago, and the Spaniards saw that it must surrender. Orders were sent for the Spanish fleet to sail out of "the bottle" and attack the American vessels. This was done, but the fleet was completely destroyed. The rest of the Spanish navy had to stay at home to defend the coast, and soon Spain asked for peace.

Copyright, 1898, by J. C. Hemment

WRECK OF THE SPANISH FLAGSHIP REINA MERCEDES
(Morro Castle, Santiago, is seen in the background)

Terms of peace

She agreed to give freedom to Cuba and to surrender Porto Rico to the United States as well as Guam, a small island in the Ladrones. The Philippines she was to sell to the United States for twenty million dollars. The treaty was signed in December, 1898, and Spain no longer owned a foot of land in the western hemisphere. What were supposed to be the remains of Christopher Columbus were removed to Spain from the cathedral of Havana. While the war was going on, the Hawaiian Islands asked to be annexed to the United States, and the request was granted.

WILLIAM McKINLEY
(Died September 14, 1901)

The war with Spain soon ended, but the natives of the Philippines for a time resisted our rule. A degree of self-government was early granted the Filipinos. In 1900 we had trouble with China. A Chinese society called the "Boxers," feeling sure that the empress of China shared

their hatred of all foreigners, set out to massacre them. An army was formed of English, Americans, Japanese, and others to rescue their missionaries and protect their citizens and business interests. Two of the principal cities in China, Pekin and Tientsin, were captured, and the Chinese yielded.

In 1901 McKinley was again elected. Six months later, the message was telegraphed over the world for the third time within forty years, "Our President has been assassinated." A great wave of sorrow swept over the land. The hatred aroused by civil war had caused the death of Lincoln; the "spoils system" had taken the life of Garfield; McKinley, however, fell by the hand of an anarchist, one who declares that no country should have a government, but that every man should do as he chooses. The sympathy of the whole world was with the United States. Only a few months earlier, America had shared the grief of Great Britain at the death of Queen Victoria, and now England shared our sorrow. Her flags were put at half-mast, badges of mourning were worn, and memorial services were held, not only in the great English cathedrals, but even in the little country churches.

The assassination of McKinley

THEODORE ROOSEVELT

A few hours after the death of William McKinley, the Vice-President, Theodore Roosevelt, repeated gravely the presidential oath: —

Theodore Roosevelt becomes president

"I do solemnly swear that I will faithfully execute the office of President of the United States; and will, to the best of my ability, preserve, protect, and defend the Constitution of the United States."

In 1905 President Roosevelt was elected. A few months later he succeeded in persuading Japan and Russia to end the fierce warfare that had been raging between them and to agree upon terms of peace. Their commissioners met at Portsmouth, New Hampshire, and in August a treaty was signed. Cuba had been made free, but her government was not strong enough to maintain order, and she now appealed to our country for help. In the autumn of 1906 the United States took temporary control of the island and appointed a governor. At about the same time our Secretary of State paid friendly visits to the South American republics.

Increased influence abroad

Since the Spanish war all sorts of manufactures have prospered. Prices have been high, work plenty, and wages in most kinds of employment have risen. Enormous fortunes have been made, and people have come to feel that they are not comfortable unless they have more luxuries than ever before. When a country is growing and changing as rapidly as the United States, new questions are constantly arising, and the greatest wisdom is needed to settle them in such a way that all will be treated with fairness. One of the most difficult problems of the present day is how to divide the profits of any undertaking between capital and labor. The capitalist furnishes the money for buildings, machinery, and materials, and also the brain for managing, advertising, and enlarging the business; the wage-earner furnishes the hands for the actual work. Neither party can succeed without the other; but what share of the gain each ought to receive is no easy matter to decide. There is a general belief that a tremendous fortune cannot be made unless the rights of the people have been violated in some way. One of the most important acts of President Roosevelt's administration was the inquiry by the Government into the methods by which some of the great corporations have become so wealthy. One charge was, for instance, that rail-

Industrial prosperity

Investigation of great corporations

roads had given the large producers lower rates than the small producers, and thus had prevented a fair competition. The methods by which some of the large insurance companies were managing the vast sums of money intrusted to them have been investigated.

The influence of the United States as a world power has become much more apparent during the last few years. The relations of this country to others were guided by John Hay, Secretary of State, until his death in 1905. He established the principle that dealings between nations should be as frank and honorable as those between individuals. The years since 1905 have been marked by progress. The Panama Canal has been completed. The rates or railroads have been regulated. Pure food laws have decreed that food products shall be inspected, shall be of the weight or quantity marked, and shall be clean, pure, and free from injurious preservatives. Laws limiting the hours of labor of children and forbidding the employment of young children in the various industries have been passed. In 1907 a new state was admitted, formed by the union of Oklahoma and Indian Territories. $10,000,000 of the indemnity due from China on account of the Boxer Rebellion has been canceled; and in graceful return for the kindness China is spending the money in educating young Chinese in this country. Wide interest has been felt in the navigation of the air; and in this science American invention takes rank. The North Pole has been discovered by Commander Robert E. Peary, U.S.N.

John Hay

To succeed President Roosevelt, William H. Taft was elected President of the United States. He was inaugurated in March, 1909.

Taft elected President

Early in 1912 Arizona and New Mexico were admitted. This leaves none of the "contiguous territory" of the United States under territorial government. Postal savings banks have been opened; but an even more important act was the establishing, in January, 1913, of the long desired parcel post. Employers' liability laws have been passed in the effort to make a just division

Parcel post established

of the loss in case of injury to an employee. Proceedings have been entered upon against trusts alleged to be in restraint of trade; here the problem is to permit the large capital necessary to the carrying on of large enterprises, and at the same time to control it in such manner that there shall be no interference with free competition. With a view to the conservation of our resources, many thousand square miles of water-power sites, and land containing phosphates, petroleum, and coal have been withdrawn by the government from individual ownership. The organization known as the Boy Scouts has been formed, which aims at developing ability to meet emergencies and a spirit of kindness to persons and animals.

Arbitration treaties

In August, 1911, treaties of general arbitration with both Great Britain and France were signed; and in March, 1912, they were ratified by the Senate. These provide that international controversies which the two nations have not been able to adjust by diplomacy, shall be submitted to the Permanent Court of Arbitration at The Hague, or to some other arbitral tribunal.

Wilson inaugurated

In March, 1913, Woodrow Wilson, formerly at the head of Princeton University, and at the time of his nomination Governor of New Jersey, was inaugurated President of the United States.

A large portion of the income of the Government had been derived from the tariff, a tax on imported goods. A bill was now passed which greatly reduced this tariff; and to make up the deficiency in revenue an income tax was decreed. And in 1914, because fewer foreign goods came to our ports on account of the great war that had broken out in Europe, it was found necessary to impose a "war tax" besides, to help supply the revenue we were losing.

Early in President Wilson's administration, a currency bill was passed. This meant a revision of our banking system. All national banks and certain state banks — that is, all banks in which government funds are deposited and that have the right to issue

bank notes — were brought under the direct supervision of a Federal Reserve Board, as it was called, at Washington; and this board was empowered further to establish a certain number of Federal banks, each in a different region of the country. The system was planned to make it possible to issue currency whenever the requirements of business demanded, and to withdraw it when the need had passed — a provision that would greatly aid the agricultural sections; for, in harvest season, when huge crops must be moved and stored, the banks are called upon to put a great deal of money into circulation, that farmers and railroads may meet these enormous expenses. Also, it was hoped that, under the wise control of the Federal Reserve Board, financial panics might always be prevented.

An especially difficult question was our relations with Mexico. In 1911 the Government of Mexico was overthrown and soon fell into the hands of one Huerta. The United States refused to recognize him as a lawful ruler. American citizens in Mexico were slain; American business interests suffered enormously; and our own Southern border was kept in a state of turmoil, requiring military patrol. At length, Huerta's refusal to salute the United States flag by way of apology for the arrest of an American sailor brought about the taking of Vera Cruz by the United States Navy and its occupation by the Army. Aside from this capture, President Wilson followed a policy of "watchful waiting," with a view to avoiding armed intervention. He invited Argentina, Brazil, and Chile — the "A. B. C. countries" — to send representatives to discuss with us plans for the permanent welfare of Mexico. The conference was held at Niagara Falls. Huerta finally withdrew to Europe. General Carranza, leader of the Constitutionalist party, was made Provisional President, pending a general and lawful election; and the United States troops were withdrawn from Vera Cruz. Carranza's government was opposed by Villa and others.

Lawlessness prevailed, and in spite of the appeals of President Wilson, Americans were murdered, not only in Mexico, but also on the American side of the line. Punitive expeditions were sent in pursuit of the invaders, and finally militia were called out to defend the border. Early in 1917, the American troops were withdrawn from Mexico, and the rule of Carranza was formally recognized by the United States. In March, 1917, the United States bought of Denmark her fifty West Indian islands for $25,000,000. From a military and strategic point of view, even this large price was not beyond their value. By wish of the islanders, the ancient name of Virgin Islands was restored.

The war which had broken out in Europe in the summer of 1914 continued to rage, becoming the greatest and most terrible in the history of the world. Germany, after declaring war on France and Russia, sought to reach Paris by marching through Belgium, a neutral country. Belgium resisted, and England came to her aid. As time passed, nearly all the other countries of Europe became involved. The ruthless methods of the German submarines in sinking the vessels of neutral nations without warning put an end to the freedom of the seas and destroyed many American lives. President Wilson had been reëlected and in March, 1917, had entered upon his second term. Early in April he advised that Congress formally accept the state of war thrust upon us by Germany and fight "for the right of those who submit to authority to have a voice in their own governments, for the rights and liberties of small nations, for a universal dominion of right by such a concert of free peoples as shall bring peace and safety to all nations and make the world itself at last free." By an overwhelming vote war against Germany was declared. A law for a "selective draft" was passed, calling to service healthy men upon whom no one was dependent, and before the summer of 1918 had come to an end, some 3,300,000

American boys were under arms, half of them in France and the other half in cantonments, where they were trained for service.

Besides this draft, another draft was quietly going on, a calling of hundreds of thousands of men and women for whatever work they could do best. Chemists were asked to use their knowledge for the Government; artists made war posters and camouflage; authors laid aside their other work and prepared whatever books and pamphlets were required; men and women who were good public speakers made four-minute addresses in the interludes of the "movies." Many of our best actors, singers, doctors, and dentists gave their time generously to make life pleasanter or healthier for the boys in khaki. Enormous amounts of money were raised by "Liberty Loans." The Red Cross, the Y.M.C.A., the Salvation Army, and other organizations did their best to help wherever they were needed. The Food Administration was formed, whose business was to find out what foods were needed for ourselves and the Allies and to divide them fairly between us, to show us how we could produce more food, and how we could avoid wastefulness. In this struggle, every one was enlisted. The boys and girls of the Garden Cities and the School Garden Armies raised millions of dollars' worth of food stuffs.

In the spring of 1918, the Germans made a last furious "drive" but were defeated. The Allies pushed on nearer and nearer to the German boundaries. On all sides the German power was crumbling, and on November 11 an armistice was declared which was virtually a German surrender.

Early in 1919 representatives of the Allied countries met in Paris to make a Treaty of Peace and to form a League of Nations for the prevention of future war. This Treaty was presented to the Senate of the United States with the League as a "rider," that is, both must be accepted or declined together. The Senate, fearing European entanglements and possible infringements upon

American independence, refused to accept the Covenant of the League without several reservations. President Wilson vetoed these reservations and also a bill declaring the war at an end. Technically, therefore, we were, in 1920, still at war with Germany.

Within two years, two important amendments to the Constitution of the United States have been declared in force: — one, establishing prohibition; the other, suffrage for women.

As a result of the November elections, Warren G. Harding, Senator from Ohio, was elected President, and Calvin Coolidge, Governor of Massachusetts, Vice-President.

SUMMARY

The war with Spain resulted in the independence of Cuba and in our becoming more clearly a world power. We acquired Porto Rico, Guam, and the Philippines. During the war, the Hawaiian Islands became, at their own request, part of the territory of the United States.

Manufactures have prospered. The methods of the great corporations have been investigated. The tariff on imports has been reduced. A currency bill has revised the banking system.

The Panama Canal has been constructed and opened to the commerce of the world.

The rule of Carranza in Mexico was recognized by the United States.

The state of war thrust upon us by Germany was formally accepted.

The Virgin Islands were bought of Denmark.

After four years of warfare, an armistice, which was really a surrender of Germany, was declared.

The Senate refused to accept the Peace League without reservations.

Amendments to the Constitution in favor of prohibition and of woman suffrage were adopted.

Warren G. Harding was elected President, and Calvin Coolidge, Vice-President.

XXIV

OUR COUNTRY TO-DAY

The United States is one of the youngest nations of the world. Civilized men first went to England nearly twenty centuries ago, but since Columbus discovered America only four centuries have passed. Each of these four centuries has a character of its own and is quite unlike the others. The first was the time of exploring, the second of colonizing, the third of deciding who should rule in America, and the fourth of growth and development.

Epochs in American history

During the first century explorers from France, England, and Spain visited the New World, each claiming for his own country the part that he explored. Each hoped to find gold, but only the Spaniards, who went to Mexico and Peru, were successful. There was little thought of making settlements, and at the end of the first century the Spanish colonies of St. Augustine and Santa Fé were the only ones on what is now the territory of the United States on the mainland.

Exploration

During the second century much colonizing was done. The French settled chiefly along the Saint Lawrence River; the English settled along the Atlantic coast of North America; the Spanish in Mexico and South America; the Dutch by the Hudson River; the Swedes by the Delaware. The European nations discovered that it was worth while to have American colonies.

Colonization

During the third century there was a long struggle to see which nation should rule in America. England and France were far ahead of the others, but which of them should it be? The French and Indians Wars gave the answer, "England." Then

Struggle for control

THE UNITED STATES AND ITS POSSESSIONS
(Shown by shading and names in heavy type)

another question arose, Should it be England or the thirteen colonies? The Revolutionary War answered, "The colonies." At the end of the third century the United States had been established and the land east of the Mississippi was under her rule.

Territorial growth

During the fourth century our country grew and developed. Between 1800 and 1853 we acquired Florida and the land west from the Mississippi to the Pacific. Since 1853 our only acquisitions in territory have been Alaska and our island possessions.

Population

There has been a gain in the United States during the last hundred years in people as well as in land. There were so few inhabitants in the colonies at the time of the Revolution that during the early part of the war European nations thought it impossible for them to win their freedom. To-day there are twenty times as many. They would be badly crowded if they had to live within the limits of the original colonies, and they have spread from the Atlantic to the Pacific and even upon the islands of the Pacific.

How has it come about that the number of people in the United States has increased with such rapidity? It is partly because more have been born than have died and partly because so many have come from foreign countries. Fifty years ago large villages were common in which there were hardly any foreigners. Now one sixth of the whole number of inhabitants of the United States are people who were born in some other country, most of them in some European state. **Emigration to America**

These people are glad to come because the workingmen of America receive higher wages than those of any other country, and because in America a man is free to rise to any position that he is fitted to hold. The country is ready to give the education that will prepare her citizens to rise to high positions. It is believed that an educated man is likely to make a better citizen than an ignorant man, and therefore the public schools of the United States are entirely free. More than that, many states have passed such laws that it is almost impossible for a child to grow up in ignorance. Then, too, there are public libraries not only in the cities but in many of the little villages, so that men who are too old to go to school may educate themselves by reading. **Education of the people**

There is opportunity to use all kinds of knowledge in carrying on the manufactures of the country. Almost everything that used to be made by hand is now made by machinery, and the skill to invent a machine that will work a little better than the one in use is always well rewarded. Knowledge is also needed to develop the mineral wealth of the country. Within the limits of the United States are metals, coal, natural gas, and petroleum, and it is the skill and inventive genius of her citizens that have brought such great wealth to the country from these products. **Great opportunities**

This inventive genius has also given us rapid and cheap transportation. In the old days a man had to make or raise most things for himself. Manufactured articles that could be made **Rapid transportation**

very cheaply in one place became exceedingly dear when they had to be carried long distances by wagon, and few of the food-stuffs could bear such long, slow journeys. Now fruit can easily be sent from California to Maine. Furniture can be made where wood is cheap and plenty, and sent to all parts of the country at a small expense. The cheap and rapid transportation of people is a great convenience. Business men do not need to live in cities near their offices or manufactories, for the steam or electric cars will carry them six or eight miles in the time that it would take to walk one mile. Mail matter, too, is transported with the greatest rapidity and certainty. Letters used to come "every once in a while." Now we are surprised and indignant at an hour's delay in the arrival of the mail.

Foreign trade

This rapidity of communication and transportation makes it possible to carry on trade with the most distant parts of the world. When we find the mail too slow, we use telephone, telegraph, or "wireless"; a message can now be sent in a few minutes whose delivery a century ago would have required many weeks. It is from this commerce that much of our country's wealth has arisen. The amount of it is greater than figures will make clear to us. We cannot have any definite idea of what one million is, and one billion really means nothing to us, but $1,500,000,000 represents the value of our trade with other parts of the world during the first year of the twentieth century.

The outlook

What the United States shall become to-morrow will lie in the hands of those who are the children of to-day. Abraham Lincoln said at Gettysburg, "We here highly resolve that government of the people, by the people, and for the people shall not perish from the earth." If every citizen cares for his own gain alone, the country will become weak; but if every one cares for the gain of all, it will become strong, and the world will be the better because of the power and the greatness of the United States of America.

INDEX

AND PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY

KEY TO PRONUNCIATION. — Marked vowels are pronounced like the same vowels similarly marked in the following words: fāte, făt, fäther, fą̄ll, câre ; thēme, yĕt, hêr ; pīne, pĭn ; bōne, nŏt, ôrb ; moon, fo͝ot ; tūne, bu͝t, bûrr. The obscure vowels are pronounced like ȧ in Durhȧm, ė in Jerusalėm, ȯ in Burtȯn, and occur only in unaccented syllables. g̃ is like g̃ in g̃o.

ABRAHAM, Plains of, 127.

Acadia (ă-kā′dĭ-a), position of, 119 *map;* attack on, 125.

Acadians (ă-kā′dĭ-ănz), exile of, 125 ; picture, 125.

Adams, John, defends soldiers of Boston massacre, 137 ; in first and second Continental Congresses, 140, 143 ; portrait of, 144; becomes president, 173 ; his death, 188.

Adams, John Quincy, presidency, 188–192.

Adams, Samuel, father of the Revolution, 137 ; a delegate to the first Continental Congress, 140; attempt to seize him at Lexington, 141 ; in the second Continental Congress, 143 ; portrait of, 144 ; opposes a final appeal to the king, 146.

Alabama (ăl-ȧ-bă′mȧ), the cruiser, 218 ; claims against England on her account, 232 ; picture of, 232.

Alaska (ȧ-lăs′kȧ), bought from Russia, 231.

Albany (ą̄l′bȧn-ĭ), situation of, reached by Hudson, 89 ; fort built at, 90 ; location, 91 *map ;* 119 *map.*

Albemarle (ăl′bė-märl), location, 109 *map;* Carolina first settled at, 109.

Alleghany (ăl′ė-gā-nĭ), valley of, occupied by the French, 123.

Allen, Ethan (ē′thȧn), captures Ticonderoga, 143 ; statue of, picture, 143.

America, Norse and Swedish voyages to, 2 ; Columbus reaches, 9, 10 ; who named for, 15 ; Hakluyt's reasons for planting colonies in, 27 ; growing interest in, 33 ; question of who shall rule in, 119–129 ; life in, before the Revolution, 129–132.

Anderson, Major, at Fort Sumter, 208, 209 ; sent back to the fort, 227.

André (ăn′drā), Major, hanged as a spy, 165, 166 ; portrait, 166.

Annapolis (ă-năp′ō-lĭs), Md., location, 102 *map ;* founded, 106.

Antietam (ăn-tē′tȧm), Lee repulsed at, 217.

Anti-slavery movement, 195.

Appomattox (ăp-pō-măt′tȯks) Court House, location, 216 *map ;* Lee's surrender at, 226, 227 ; picture of, 226.

Arapahoe (ȧ-răp′ȧ-hō) camp, Indian Territory, picture, 239.

Arbitration, of Alabama claims, 232 ; between Japan and Russia, 246 ; treaties, 248 ; for Mexico, 249, 250.

Armada (är-mä′dȧ), Spanish, defeated, 30.

Army canteen, picture, 228.

Arnold (ăr′nȯld), Benedict (bĕn′ė-dĭct), comes to Boston, 142 ; starts to capture Ticonderoga, 143 ; leads an attack on Quebec, 147 ; relieves Fort Stanwix, 159 ; gets command of West Point, 165 ; his treason, 165, 166.

Arthur, Chester A., president, 235, 236.

Asia (ā′shĭȧ), trade with, in the fifteenth century, 2 ; caravan travel in, 3 ; trade with, stopped by the Turks, 3.

Atlanta (ăt-lăn'tȧ), captured by Sherman, 224; location, 224 *map*.
Atlantic (ăt-lăn'tĭk) cable, Great Eastern, laying the, picture, 230; put in operation, 231.
Atlantic Ocean, early fear of, 12; Columbus plans to cross, 3.
Authors, first really great American, 194.

Bacon (bā'cŏn), Nathaniel, rebellion in Virginia, led by, 51.
Baltimore (bȧl'tĭ-mōr), first Lord, founds Maryland for the Catholics, 105; dies, 106.
Baltimore, second Lord, portrait of, 105; begins the settlement of Maryland, 106; deprived of his colony and reinstated, 108.
Baltimore, Md., attack on, during the war of 1812, 181.
Baltimore sixpence, picture, 106.
Barbary (bär'bȧ-rĭ) pirate vessel, picture, 174.
Barbary States, war with, 174; cannon captured from, picture, 175.
Beauregard (bō-rĭ-gärd), General, attacks Fort Sumter, 208; commands at Bull Run, 211.
Beaver, picture of, 71.
Bennington (bĕn'ĭng-tŏn), Vt., battle of, 158; location, 158 *map*.
Bergen (bêr'gĕn), N.J., location, 91 *map*; founded, 95.
Berkeley, Governor of Virginia, 51.
Berkeley (bêrk'lĭ), Lord, obtains part of New Jersey, 97; sells it to Quakers, 98.
Blockade runners, 212; picture of one, 213.
Blockhouse in Maine, picture, 73.
Bon Homme Richard (*French* bôn-ôm-rē-shär'), battle with the Serapis, 163; picture of, 164.
Books, in America before the Revolution, 130; the first great American writers of, 194.
Boston, Mass., founded by the Winthrop colony, 63; first town house in, picture, 65; massacre in, 137; the Tea-party, 138; punished by the Port Bill, 139; siege of, 142–148.
Boston and Worcester Railroad train of 1835, picture, 191.
Boston Massacre, 137; Paul Revere's picture of, 137.
Boston Port Bill, 139.
Boston Tea-party, 138.
Bowery, The, why so named, 92.
Boy Scouts, 248.
Braddock (brăd'ŏk), General, scorns advice, 124; his line of march, 124 *map*; his army routed, 124; killed, 125.
Bradford, William, in the Pilgrim exploring party, 55; his armchair, picture, 57; defies Canonicus, 58; picture, 59; stops a Christmas celebration, 59, 60.
Brooklyn (brŏŏk'lĭn) Heights, Howe drives Washington from, 151.
Brown, John, in Kansas, 205; his raid, 206.
Bryant, William Cullen, 194; his home at Roslyn, picture, 194.
Buchanan (bŭ-kăn'ȧn), James, president, 203, 205.
Bull Run, battle of, 210–212.
Bunker Hill, fortified by the Americans, 144; battle of, 145; view of the battle, 145; the monument erected, 187; picture of the monument on, 187.
Burgesses (bûr'jĕs-ĕz), House of, in Virginia, established, 50; objects to Stamp Act, 135; to Boston Port Bill, 139.
Burgoyne (bûr-goin'), General, his invasion of New York, 158; the region of his invasion, *map*, 158; surrender, 159.
Burke, Edmund, objects to the Stamp Act, 135.
Burning of Charlestown and the Battle of Bunker Hill, picture, 145.

Cabot (kăb'ŏt), John, his voyage to America, 13, 14; describing his voyage, picture, 14.
California (kăl-ĭ-fôr'nĭ-ȧ), discovery of gold in, 203; trouble over its admission as a state, 204.
Canal showing horses, tow-boats, and locks, picture, 190.

Cannon captured in the Revolution, picture, 147; captured from the Barbary States, picture, 175.
Canoe (kȧ-nōō′), making a, 36.
Canonicus (kăn-nŏn′ĭ-kŭs), hostile to Plymouth, 58; receives Roger Williams, 75; prevented by Williams from joining the Pequots, 80.
Cape Breton (brĕt′ŏn), Island, 121.
Capture of Hannah Duston, picture, 120.
Carolinas (kăr-ō-lī′nȧz). *See* North and South Carolina.
Carolinas and Georgia, The, *map*, 109.
Carpenter's Hall, Philadelphia, 140; picture, 139.
Carpet-baggers, 230.
Carroll, Charles, of Carrollton, signs the Declaration of Independence, 149.
Carteret (kär′tė-rĕt), Sir George, obtains New Jersey, 97.
Carteret, Philip, cousin of Sir George, his reception in New Jersey, 98.
Cartier (kär-tyā′), Jacques, sails to the St. Lawrence, 20; claims the territory for France, 21.
Carver (kär′vêr), John, in the Pilgrims' exploring party, 55.
Catholics, persecution of, in England, 104, 105; Maryland founded for, 105.
Centennial Exposition, 234.
Chaise (shāz), an old-fashioned, picture, 189.
Chaleurs, Baie des (bā dā shä-lêr′), discovered, 20.
Chambersburg (chām′bêrz-bûrg), location, 216 *map;* burned, 223.
Champlain (shăm-plān′), his early years, 114; explores the St. Lawrence, 114; joins the Indians opposed to the Iroquois, 115.
Charles I., grants a charter to Puritans to form the Massachusetts Bay Company, 61; portrait of, 61; his despotism, 62; grants Maryland to Lord Baltimore, 105.
Charles II., provoked over the sale of Maine to Massachusetts, 73; annuls the Massachusetts charter, 74; Penn's conduct to, 100; grants Pennsylvania to Penn, 101; portrait of, 101; grants Carolina to a company, 109.
Charleston (chärlz′tŏn), located, 109 *map;* 165 *map;* first settlement in South Carolina, 110; entrance of the harbor, picture, 110; British defeated at, 150.
Charter Oak episode, 82.
Chicago as it was in 1832, picture, 186.
Chickamauga (chĭk-ȧ-mą′gȧ), battle of, 221; location, 224 *map.*
Child labor laws, 247.
Chinese, exclusion of, 237; students, 247.
Civil Service Reform, 235, 239.
Clark, George Rogers, drives the British out of the Northwest, 162.
Clark, William, sent to explore the Northwest, 176.
Clark's Island, landing of Pilgrims on, 55.
Clay, Henry, his birthplace, picture, 186; urges the Missouri Compromise, 187; and the Compromise of 1850, 204.
Cleveland, Grover, president, 236, 237.
Clinton, Governor, of New York, interested in the Erie Canal, 190.
Codfish, picture of a, 33.
Columbian Exposition, the, 240; peristyle at, picture, 240.
Columbus (kō-lŭm′bŭs), Christopher, born at Genoa, 2; plans to cross the Atlantic, 3; his armor, picture, 3; refused assistance and deceived by Portugal, 4; goes to Spain, 4; at La Rabida, 5; his demands, 5, 6; aided by Queen Isabella. 6; his voyage, 7, 8; his ship, picture, 8; lands on San Salvador, 9; picture of the landing, 10; his reception in Spain, 10, 11; makes an egg stand on end, 11; his later voyages, 11; his death and character, 12; statue of, 12.
Companion of Governor Nicolls, picture, 97.
Compass, varies on Columbus's voyage, 8; picture of an early, 8.
Compromise of 1850, 204.
Concord, fight at, 142.
Confederacy, the, organized, 208; map of,

211; shut in by the capture of the Mississippi, 221; cut in two by Sherman, 225; comes to an end, 226, 227.
Confederate, a, picture, 210.
Confederate battle flag, picture, 208.
Confederate capitol, Richmond, picture, 223.
Congress of the United States, how made up, 170; power of, 171.
Connecticut (kŏn-ĕt-ĭ′kŭt), beginnings of, 77, 78; Hooker's party goes to, 79; Davenport's party founds New Haven, 81; education in, 82; preservation of the charter, 82.
Connecticut Valley settlements, *map*, 82.
Conservation of natural resources, 248.
Constantinople (kŏn-stăn-tĭ-nō′pl), eastern trade through, 2; captured by Turks, 3.
Constitution of the United States, preparation and adoption of, 170, 171; Thirteenth Amendment to, 229.
Constitution, the, picture of, 177; her fight with the Guerrière, 178.
Continental (kŏn-tĭ-nĕn′tăl) Congress, the meeting of the first, 140; of the second, members of it, 143; its lack of money, 156.
Continental money, picture of, 156; its depreciation in value, 164.
Contrabands, what they were, 217.
Cooper (kōōp′ẽr), J. Fenimore, 194.
Corduroy roads, picture, 224.
Cornwallis (kôrn-wŏl′ĭs), Lord, drives Washington across New Jersey, 152; beaten at Trenton, 152; and Princeton, 154; his operations in South Carolina, 164; goes to Yorktown, 167; surrender of, 167; picture of the surrender, 167.
Corporations investigated, 246, 247.
Cotton, raised in Georgia, 172; picture of, 172; cotton field, picture of, 173; export of, by blockade runners, 212.
Cotton-gin, invented by Whitney, 172; picture of, 173; effect of, on slavery and duties, 173.
Coureurs de bois (*French*, kōō-rêr′ dẽ bwä′), who they were, 116; picture of one, 116.
Cuba (kū′bȧ), trouble over the revolution in, 241; location, 243 *map*, 247 *map*; given her freedom, 244; controlled, 246.
Cuban homestead, a, picture, 241.
Cup given by Winthrop, picture, 64.
Currency bill, 248.

Dare, Virginia, 29.
Davenport (dȧ′vẽn-pōrt), Rev. John, leads his church to New Haven, 81.
Davis, Jefferson, in the Mexican War, 202; chosen president of the Confederacy, 208.
De Soto (dā sō′tō), discovers the Mississippi, 21–23; picture, 22.
Debtors, condition of, in England, 111.
Declaration of Independence, signed, 148; incidents of its signing, 149.
Deerfield (dēr′fēld), Mass., location, 80 *map*, 119 *map*; attack on, 120.
Delaware (dĕl′ȧ-wâr), Swedes in, 93, 94; conquered by the Dutch, 94, 95.
Delaware River, location, 151 *map*; Washington's retreat across the, 152; Washington crossing the, picture, 152.
Dewey (dū′ĭ), Commodore, captures the Spanish fleet at Manilla, 242.
Dinwiddie (dĭn-wĭd′ĭ), Governor, of Virginia, sends Washington to Fort Duquesne, 123.
Doughoregan Manor, Maryland, picture, 107.
Dover (dō′vẽr), N.H., location, 62 *map*, 119 *map*; settled, 72.
Dred Scott Decision, 205.
Duston (dŭs′tŏn), Mrs. Hannah, capture and escape of, 120.
Dutch, make settlements on the Connecticut, 77, 78; Hudson River explored for, 89; settle in New Netherlands, 90–93; conquer New Sweden, 94; overthrown by the English, 95.
Dutch flag, picture, 91.
Dutch West India Company, activities along the Hudson River, 90; introduce the patroon system, 91.

Early (êrl′ĭ), General, 222, 223.

Early settler's house, picture, 84.
Eliot, John, preaches to the Indians, 66, 67.
Elizabeth, Queen, story of, and Raleigh, 26; portrait of, 27; her reasons for not aiding Raleigh's expedition, 28; picture of her coach, 28.
Elm in Cambridge, under which Washington took command of the army, picture, 146.
Emancipation (ē-măn-sĭ-pā′shŭn) Proclamation, signed, 218.
Embargo (ĕm-bär′gō) Act, passed, 176.
Emigrants going West across the prairies, picture, 185.
England, Cabot sails from, 14; her claims in North America, 24; advantages to her of colonies in America, 27, 28; defeats the Spanish Armada, 30; religious persecution in, 52; condition of poor debtors in, 111; contest with France in America, 119; her supremacy in America settled, 128; passes laws oppressive to America, 133; tries to keep a standing army in America, 133, 134; writs of assistance, 134; attitude toward the colonies, 135; passes the Stamp Act, 135; repeals it, 136; imposes the tea tax, 137; revolution against, 141–168; causes of the war of 1812 with, 176; attitude of, toward the Confederacy, 212; influence of the Trent affair on, 213.
English soldier, of 1603, picture, 44; of Wolfe's time, picture, 127.
Ericsson (ĕr′ĭk-sŏn), John, inventor of the monitor, 215.
Erie Canal, building of, 190.

Faneuil (făn′ĕl) Hall, picture of, 133.
Farragut (făr′ă-gŭt), David, sent to take New Orleans, 213, 214; an August morning with, picture, 214.
Federal Reserve Board, 249.
Ferdinand (fĕr′dĭ-nănd), King, of Spain considers Columbus's plans, 4; builds a tomb to him, 12.
Field, Cyrus (sī′rŭs) W., puts through the Atlantic Cable, 231.
Fillmore (fĭl′mōr), Millard (mĭl′lärd), President, 203.
First meeting-house in Salem, picture, 74.
First town house in Boston, picture, 65.
Fishhooks of bone, 38.
Flax wheel, picture, 87.
Florida, explored by Ponce de Leon, 16; claimed by Spain, 24; bought by the United States, 184.
Foot-stove, picture of, 85.
Fort Christiana, built, 94; location, 102 *map*.
Fort Duquesne (dōō-kān′), built, 123; location, 124 *map;* Braddock's defeat at, 124, 125.
Fort McHenry, Baltimore, picture, 181.
Fort Moultrie, location, 165 *map*.
Fort Stanwix (stăn′wĭx), location, 158 *map;* siege of, 159.
Fort Sumter (sŭm′tẽr) besieged, 208; surrendered, 209; in 1861, picture, 210; location, 211 *map;* retaken, 227.
Fort Ticonderoga. *See* Ticonderoga.
Fortress of Quebec, the, as it is to-day, picture, 126.
"Forty-niners," 203.
"Fountain of Youth," 16.
France, sends out Jacques Cartier, 20; her claims in North America, 24; explorations, 114; contest with England in America begun, 119; pushes her settlements into the Ohio valley, 123; her supremacy in North America ended, 127, 130; attempts to win her aid for the colonies, 157; sends a fleet to America, 161; trouble with the United States, 173; sells Louisiana, 175; presents the Bartholdi Statue of Liberty to the United States, 237.
Franklin (frănk′lĭn), Benjamin, his advice to Braddock, 124; his Poor Richard's Almanac, 131; his device to represent union or death, picture, 136; his remark about Concord fight, 142; in the second Continental Congress, 143; signs the Declaration of Independence, 149; portrait of, 150; sent to France, 157; his remark about Howe in Philadelphia,

161; his contribution to the Columbian Exposition, 246.
Franklin's printing-press, picture, 132.
Freight wagon, picture, 189.
French frigate, a, picture, 162.
French frontier in the North, map, 119.
Fugitive-slave law, 204.
Fulton (fūl'tŏn), Robert, invents the steamboat, 183; picture of his boat, 183.
Fur trade, in Maine, 71; between Maine and Massachusetts, 72; in New Netherlands, 90, 91; forbidden to patroons, 91, 92.

Gage (gāj'), General, sends British troops from Boston to Concord, 141; besieged in Boston, 142; decides to storm Bunker Hill, 144.
Garfield, James A., elected president, 235; assassinated, 235; portrait, 235.
Garrison (găr-rĭ-sŏn), William Lloyd (loid), publishes the "Liberator," 195.
Geneva (jĕn-ē'vâ), 232.
Genoa (jĕn'ō-â), birthplace of Columbus, 2; interested in Asiatic trade, 2; refuses to assist Columbus, 3.
Gentleman of 1610, a, picture of, 46.
Georgia (jôr'jĭ-â), why chosen for settlement, 112; first settlement in, 112; industries of, 113; given up to the king, 113; captured by the British, 163.
Gettysburg (gĕt'ĭz-bûrg), location, 216 *map;* battle of, 219; dedication of field, and Lincoln's speech at, 219.
Gomez (*Spanish*, gō'mĕth), General, 241.
Goodyear, Charles, vulcanizes rubber, 199.
Gorges, Sir Ferdinando (fêr-dĭ-năn'dō gôr'jĕz), becomes interested in Maine, 71; associates with Mason, 72; takes Maine in the division of land, 73.
"Grand Model," Locke's code of law for Carolina, 110.
Grant, General U. S., in the Mexican War, 202; takes Vicksburg, 220; put at the head of the army, 222; portrait of, 222; presses on toward Richmond, 222; forces Lee to surrender, 226; becomes president, 232.
"Greenbacks," 234.
Greene, General, opposes Cornwallis in the South, 166, 167.
Greenland, Norse and Swedish voyages to, 2.
Guam (gwäm), ceded to the United States, 244; location, 248 *map*.
Guerrière (*French*, gâr-rĭ-ârr'), sunk by the Constitution, 177, 178.
Gunboat, Union river, picture, 220.

"Hail, Columbia," written, 174.
Hakluyt (hăk'lĭt), Richard, his recommendations about America, 27, 28; advice to emigrants to America in 1607, 43.
Half-Moon, Hudson's vessel, 89; picture of, leaving Amsterdam, 89.
Hamilton (hăm'ĭl-tŏn), Alexander, his suggestions as secretary of the treasury, 171; portrait of, 172.
Hancock, John, attempt to capture at Lexington, 141; member of the second Continental Congress, 143; recommends the burning of Boston, 147; his house in Boston, picture, 148; signs the Declaration of Independence, 149.
Harper's Ferry, John Brown captured at, 206; picture, 206; location, 216 *map*.
Harrison (hâr'ĭ-sŏn), Benjamin, elected president, 237, 238.
Harrison, William Henry, his presidential campaign, 197; his death, 198.
"Harrison Campaign Almanac," picture from the, 198.
Hartford (härt'fôrd), Conn., English drive the Dutch from, 78; Thomas Hooker founds the city, 79; first meeting-house in, picture, 79; location, 80 *map*.
Harvard (här'vard), John, gives his library to the college, 66; statue of, 66.
Harvard College founded, 66.
Haverhill (hā'vē-rĭl), Mass., location, 119 *map;* Indian attack on, 120.
Hay, John, 247.
Hayes, Rutherford (rŭth'ĕr-fôrd) B., elected president, 234.
Henry, Patrick, speaks on Stamp Act, 135.

on Boston Port Bill, 139; in Congress, 140, 143; governor of Virginia, 162.
Hessians (hĕsh'ănz), hired to fight in America, 146; beaten at Trenton, 152.
Holland, life of the Pilgrims in, 53; flag of, picture, 91.
Hooker (hŏŏk'ĕr), Rev. Thomas, leads a party to Hartford, Conn., 79.
House where Yale College was founded, 82.
Howe, Elias, invents practical sewing machine, 199.
Howe, General, takes General Gage's place, 147; evacuates Boston, 148; drives Washington from New York, 151.
Hudson (hŭd'sŏn), Henry, early life, 88; discovers the Hudson River, 89; lost, 89.
Hudson River, discovered, 89; Dutch colonists on, 90, 91; settlements about, map, 91; British plan to get control of, 151, 158.
Huguenots (hū'gĕ-nŏts), emigration of, to the Carolinas, 110.
Hull, Captain, defeats the Guerrière, 177, 178.

Independence Hall, picture of, 149; President's chair in, picture, 170.
India, theories of reaching, by crossing the Atlantic, 1.
Indian baby's cradle, picture, 37.
Indian corn, picture, 47.
Indian fur-traders, picture, 78.
Indians (ĭn-dĭ-ănz), why so named, 10, 34; first picture of a South American, 11; picture of a Mexican, 20; their characteristics, 34; their dwellings, 35; squaws and braves, 35, 36; the papoose, 36, 37; children's education, 37; weapons, 38; games of the boys, 38; method of fighting, 39; wampum, 39, 40; religion, 40; conduct toward whites, 41; attitude toward colonists at Jamestown, 45, 47; at Plymouth, 57; John Eliot's service to, 66, 67; under King Philip attack the English, 68; Pequot War, 80, 81; Penn's treatment of, 102, 103; Champlain's conduct toward, 115; the Jesuit feeling for, 116; general attitude of the French to, 116; attack Schenectady, 119; Haverhill and Deerfield, 120; help the Tories against the Americans, 162; stirred up by the English in the war of 1812, 179; Seminole War, 183; troubles with, in the West, 238.
Internal improvements, payment for, 192.
Inventions, 199.
Iroquois (ĭr'ō-kwoi), Pennsylvania Indians tributary to, 103; rendered hostile to the French by Champlain's attack, 115.
Irving, Washington, 194.
Isabella (ĭz-ă-bĕl'lă), queen of Spain, 4; helps Columbus, 5, 6; portrait of, 7; received Columbus on his return, 11.

Jackson, Andrew, wins the battle of New Orleans, 181; sent against the Seminoles, 184; events of his presidency, 192–194; portrait of, 192.
Jackson, "Stonewall," at Bull Run, 212.
James I., king of England, courts the favor of Spain, 31; grants Virginia to the London and Plymouth Companies, 42; persecutes the Puritans and Separatists, 52, 53.
Jamestown (jāmz'town), founded, 44; hardships at, 44; John Smith becomes governor, 46; colonists obliged to work, 47; "starving time" in, 48; picture of, in 1622, 49; location, 102 *map*.
Jefferson, Thomas, author of the Declaration of Independence, 149; portrait of, 150; events of his term as president, 174–176; his death, 188.
Jesuit (jĕz'ū-ĭt) explorer, a, picture, 115.
Jesuits, the, 116, 117.
Johnson, Andrew, becomes president, 229.
Johnston, General Samuel Joseph E., 223, 224.
Joliet (*French*, zhō-lyā'), explores the Mississippi with Marquette, 117.
Jones, John Paul, captures the Serapis, 163.

Kansas (kăn'zăs), trouble over slavery in, 205.

Keg brought through the Erie Canal, 191.
Key (kē), Francis Scott, author of "The Star-Spangled Banner," 181.
King Philip. *See* Philip.

La Plata (lä plä′tä) River, visited by Magellan, 17.
La Rabida (lä rä′bē-dä), convent of, Columbus received at, 5; picture of, 6.
La Salle (lä säl′), explores the Mississippi to its mouth, 117; attempts to plant a colony at its mouth, 118; murdered, 118.
Ladrones (lä-drōnz), location, 18 *map;* discovered by Magellan, 19; one taken from Spain by the United States, 244.
Lafayette (lä-fā-yĕt′), portrait of, 157; comes to America, 157; at Yorktown, 167; visits America, 187.
Lee, General Henry, pronounces Washington's funeral oration, 174.
Lee, Richard Henry, at first Continental Congress, 140; urges independence, 148.
Lee, General Robert E., in the Mexican War, 202; captures John Brown, 206; portrait of, 216; in command of the Confederate army, 216; withdraws from Antietam, 217; defeated at Gettysburg, 219; surrenders at Appomattox, 226.
Lewis (lū′ĭs), Meriwether (mĕ′rĭ-wĕth-ĕr), picture of, 175; explores the Northwest, 176.
Lexington, battle of, 142.
Liberty, statue of, presented to the United States by France, 237; picture of, 238.
Liberty Bell, picture of, 149.
Lincoln (lĭnk′ŏn), Abraham, elected president, 206; portrait of, 209; calls for volunteers, 210; signs the Emancipation Proclamation, 218; his Gettysburg speech, 219; assassinated, 227.
Locke, John, formulates the "Grand Model" for Carolina, 110.
London (lŭn′dŏn) Company, grant to, 42; map of grant, 43; founds Jamestown, 43, 44; foolish demands upon the colony, 47; sends a shipload of women to Virginia, 49; agrees to permit a legislative assembly in Virginia, 50.
"Lone Star State," 198.
Long Island, battle of, 151.
Long Wharf, the Tea-party at, 138; tablet on, picture, 140.
Lookout Mountain, battle of, 221.
Louisburg (lōō′ĭs-bûrg), location, 119 *map;* attacked by New England troops, 121; view of, from the northeast, 121; captured, 122; cross captured at, picture, 122.
Louisiana (lōō-ē-zĭ-ă′nà) Territory, purchased from France, 175; explored, 176.

McClellan (măk-klĕl′lăn), General, trains the Union army, 212; advances on Richmond and is repulsed, 216.
McDowell (măk-dow′ĕl), Irvin, Union commander at Bull Run, 211.
McKinley (mă-kĭn′lĭ), William, proposes a protective tariff, 238; made president, 241; portrait of, 244; reëlected and assassinated, 245.
Madison (măd′ĭ-sŏn), Dolly, her escape from Washington, 180; portrait, 180.
Madison, James, events during his term as president, 176.
Magellan (mă-jĕl′ăn), portrait of, 17; sails from Spain, 17; discovers Magellan's Straits, 18; killed in the Philippines, 19.
Magellan's Straits, discovered, 18; natives of, 19.
Mail system, before the Revolution, 130.
Maine, The, entering Havana Harbor, picture, 242.
Maine, beginnings in, 70, 71; why so named, 72; settlements in, 72; separated from New Hampshire and bought by Massachusetts, 73; admitted as a state, 187.
Manhattan (măn-hăt′tăn) Island, first settlement on, 90.
Manila (mă-nĭl′à), battle of, 242; location, 242 *map;* 247 *map.*
Maps: the one Columbus used, 4; showing real position of the continents, 5; of Columbus's route, 9; showing the old idea of a southern continent, 15; the

route of Magellan's ships, 18; grants to the London and Plymouth companies, 43; New England coast settlements, 62: Connecticut valley settlements, 80; settlements about the Hudson River, 91; the middle colonies, 102; the Carolinas and Georgia, 109; the French frontier in the North, 119; region about Fort Duquesne, 124; central scene of the Revolutionary War, 151; region of Burgoyne's invasion, 158; seat of war in the South, 165; disputed territory of the Mexican War, 202; the Southern Confederacy, 211; scene of war near Washington and Richmond, 216; Sherman's route to the sea, 224; the Philippine Islands, 242; the West Indies, 243; the United States and its possessions, 248.

Marion (măr'ĭ-on), Francis, his guerrilla warfare in South Carolina, 165.

Marquette (*French*, mär-kĕt'), explores the Mississippi, 116, 117; statue, 117.

Maryland (mĕr'ĭ-lănd), granted to Lord Baltimore, 105; why named, 105; first emigrants to, 106; first settlement in, 106; religious freedom in, 107; plantation life in, 107; Puritan rebellion in, 108.

Mason, George, 139.

Mason (mā'son), Captain John, helps Gorges in Maine, 72; takes New Hampshire in the division of land, 73.

Massachusetts (măs-sȧ-chū'sĕts), founded, 61, 62; Roger Williams expelled from, 65; trouble with Quakers in, 67; attacked by King Philip, 68; witchcraft delusion, 69; buys Maine, 73; charter of, annulled, 73, 74; made a royal province, 74; people from, go to Connecticut, 78, 79.

Massachusetts Bay Company, chartered, 61; holds its meetings in New England, 62; charter of, annulled, 73, 74.

Massasoit (măs'ȧ-soit), makes a treaty with the Pilgrims, 57; receives Roger Williams, 75.

Matchlock and rest, picture, 81.

Mayflower, Pilgrims come to America in, 54; picture of, 55.

Merrimac (mĕr'-ĭ-măk), the, 214; picture of, 215; battle with the Monitor, 215.

Mexican boy, picture, 201.

Mexico (mĕx'ĭ-kō), has trouble with Texas, 198; war with, 201, 202; *map* of the disputed territory, 202; territory ceded by, 202; intervention in, 249, 250.

Middle colonies, *map* of, 102.

Minute man, the picture, 142.

Mississippi (mĭs-sĭs-sĭp'pĭ) River, discovered, 22; explored by Marquette and Joliet, 117; by La Salle, 117, 118; settlement at the mouth of, in 1719, picture, 118; Union plan to get control of, 213; plan succeeds, 221.

"Missouri (mĭs-ōō'rĭ) Compromise, The," 187.

Monitor, the, 215; picture of, 215; fight with the Merrimac, 215.

Monmouth (mŏn'mŭth), location, 151 *map;* battle of, 161.

Monongahela (mō-nŏn-gȧ-hē'lȧ), 152.

Monroe (mŭn-rō'), James, events during his presidency, 183–187.

"Monroe Doctrine, The," 184, 250.

Montcalm (mŏnt-kăm'), General, in command of Quebec, 126; defeated by Wolfe and killed, 127.

Montgomery (mŏnt-gŭm'ẽr-ĭ), General, captures Montreal but is slain at Quebec, 147.

Montreal (mŏn-trĭ-ȧl'), visited by Cartier, 21; location, 119 *map*, 158 *map;* captured by Montgomery, 147.

Monument at Champoeg, Oregon, picture, 200.

Morris (mŏr'ĭs), Robert, the financial backer of the Revolution, 156.

Morristown (mŏr'rĭs-town), location, 151 *map;* winter at, 154; second winter at, 166.

Morro (mōr'rō) Castle, Havana, picture, 242; Santiago, picture, 244.

Morse, Samuel F. B., invents the telegraph, 199.

Mortar for throwing shells, picture, 220.

Moultrie (mōō'trĭ *or* mōōl'trĭ), Colonel, defeats the British at Charleston, 150.

Napoleon (nà-pō′lĕ-ŏn), sells Louisiana to the United States, 175.
Narragansetts (năr-à-găn′sĕts), threaten Plymouth, 58.
Nebraska (nē-brăs′kà), trouble over slavery in, 205.
Neutrals, French, 125, 126.
New Amsterdam (ăm′stĕr-dăm), founded, 90; first view of, picture, 90; location, 91 *map;* how governed, 92; view of, picture, 93; becomes New York, 97.
New England, first colony in, 52; coast of, explored by John Smith, 53; coast settlements of, *map,* 62; confederacy of, 76; early homes in, 83, 84; furniture, 85; home manufactures, 86, 87.
New England kitchen, picture, 85.
"New England Primer," picture from, 130; its contents, 131.
New England stockade, picture, 81.
New Hampshire, first settlement in, 72; why named, 73; cut from Maine and under the protection of Massachusetts, 73; made a royal province, 74.
New Haven (hā′vn), Conn., location, 80 *map;* founded by John Davenport, 81.
New Jersey, first settlement in, 95; Nicolls sends a colony to, 97; given to Berkeley and Carteret, 97; turned over to the Quakers, 98; Washington's retreat across, 152.
New Netherlands (nĕth′er-lândz), why so named, 90; English and Dutch claims to, 93; becomes New York, 97.
New Orleans (ôr′le-ânz), attempt to buy, results of the Louisiana Purchase, 175; battle of, 181; location, 211 *map;* captured by Farragut, 214.
New Sweden, founded, 93; captured by the Dutch, 94, 95.
Newspapers before the Revolution, 104, 130.
New York city, New Amsterdam becomes, 97; Washington takes his army thither, 148.
Nicolls (nĭk′ŏlz), Richard, sent to take New Netherlands for England, 96; becomes governor of New York, 97.
Niña (nēn′yä), one of Columbus's ships, 7.
North America, first seen by John Cabot, 14; early views about, 19; French, English, and Spanish claims in, 24; the Pacific coast explored, 32; Indian inhabitants of, 34, 35.
North Carolina (kăr-ō-lī′nà), grant of, 109; first settled at Albemarle, 109; Huguenot emigration to, 110; laws of, 110; industries of, 111; separated from South Carolina, 111.
North Pole, discovery of, 247.
Northwest Passage, search for, 19, 32.
Northwestern Territory, all the states interested in, 170.
Norwegian (nôr-wē′jàn) ship, picture of, 2.
Nueces (nwā′sĕs), disputed boundary, 201; location, 202 *map.*
Nullification, suppressed by Jackson, 193.

Oglethorpe (ōgl′thôrp), General James, portrait of, 111; plans to relieve the debtors and prisoners in England, 112; chooses Georgia for his settlement, 112; his expectation for the colony, 113.
Ohio (ō-hī′ō), valley of, claimed by France, 123.
Oklahoma (ō-klà-hō′mà), opened to settlement, 239; admitted as a state, 247.
"Old Abe," 220; picture, 221.
"Old Glory," first appearance of, 159.
"Old Ironsides," picture, 177.
Old South Meeting-House, picture of, 72; picture of the pulpit, 138.
Old State House in Philadelphia, picture, 149.
Olives, prospect of raising in Georgia, 113; branch of, picture, 113.
Oregon (ŏr′ē-gŏn), interest in aroused, 200; boundary of, settled, 201.
Osawatomie (ŏs-à-wăt′ō-mē), 205.
Osceola (ŏs-sē-ō′là), chief of the Seminoles, picture, 184.

Pacific (pà-sĭf′ĭk) Ocean, first crossed by Magellan, 18.
Palos (pä′lōs), location, 5 *map;* Columbus starts from, 6, 7.

Panama (păn-ȧ-mä′) Canal, 247.
Papoose (păp-o͞os′), treatment of, 36; picture of, 37.
Patroon (pä-tro͞on′) system, introduced along the Hudson River, 91.
Peary, Commander Robt. E., 247.
Peggy Stewart, the brig, 139.
Pemaquid (pĕm′ȧ-kwĭd), location, 62 *map;* settled, 72.
Penn (pĕn), Admiral, disappointed in his son, 99, 100.
Penn, William, early years, 99; portrait of, at twenty-two, 99; turns Quaker, 100; conduct toward the king, 100; obtains Pennsylvania, 101; decides to pay the Indians for the land, 101, 102; founds Philadelphia, 102; makes friends of the Indians, 102, 103; autograph and seal, picture, 103; returns to England, 103; his house, picture, 104.
Pennsylvania (pĕn-sĭl-vā′nĭ-ȧ) granted to Penn, 101; settled by Quakers, 102; bought from the Indians, 102, 103; education in, 103, 104.
Pequots (pē′kwŏtz), make war on the English, 80; defeated, 81.
Perry, Commodore O. H., builds a fleet on Lake Erie, 177; captures the British fleet, 178, 179; his flag, picture, 179; his message, 179.
Petersburg, location, 216 *map;* Grant at, 222.
Philadelphia (fĭl-ȧ-dĕl′fĭ-ȧ), founded, 102; becomes the largest city in the colonies, 104; French Neutrals in, 126; first Continental Congress meets in, 139; British forces take, 160.
Philip, king, makes war on the English, 68; killed, 69; picture of, 69.
Philippine (fĭl′ĭ-pēn) canoe, picture of, 19.
Philippine Islands, discovered by Magellan, 19; map of, 242; sold to the United States, 244; location of, 247 *map.*
Pierce (pērs *or* pŭrs), Franklin, president, 203.
Pilgrim cradle, picture of, 56.
Pilgrim dress, picture of, 52.
Pilgrims, who they were, 52; escape to Holland, 53; plan to come to America, 53; their departure from Holland, picture, 54; their voyage in the Mayflower, 54; search for a home, 55; sufferings of, 56; relations with the Indians, 57, 58; going to church, picture, 58; their religious feeling, 59, 60.
Pillory, the, picture, 68.
Pinckney (pĭnk′nĭ), Charles, his defiance of France, 174.
Pinta (*Spanish*, pēn′tä), one of Columbus's ships, 7.
Pipe, an Indian, picture of, 40.
Piscataqua (pĭs-kăt′ȧ-kwą) River, divides Maine and New Hampshire, 73.
Pistol, of Ponce de Leon's time, picture, 16; Dutch flintlock, picture, 94; flintlock given by Lafayette to Washington, 156.
Pitt, William, objects to the Stamp Act, 135.
Plymouth (plĭm′ŏth), Mass., reason for the colony begun at, 52; named by John Smith, 55; landing of Pilgrims at, 56; first winter at, 56; first Thanksgiving at, 58; town meeting begun at, 59; location, 62 *map;* people of, establish a post at Windsor, Conn., 78.
Plymouth Company, grant to, 42; map of grant, 43; sells Massachusetts to the Massachusetts Bay Company, 61.
Plymouth Rock, picture of, 56.
Pocahontas (pō-kȧ-hŏn′tȧs), saves John Smith, 46; marries John Rolfe and goes to England, 48.
Polk (pōk), James K., events of his presidency, 201–203.
Ponce de Leon (*Spanish*, pōn′thā dā lā-ōn′), explores Florida, 16.
"Pony Express, The," 233; picture of, 233.
"Poor Richard's Almanac," 131.
Population of America in the eighteenth century, 129.
Port Hudson, La., location, 211 *map;* captured, 221.
Port Royal, N.S., location, 119 *map.*
Porto Rico (pōr′tō rē′kō), location, 243

map, 247 *map;* ceded to the United States, 244.
Portsmouth (pōrts′mŭth), N. H., settled, 72; location, 62 *map*.
Portugal (pōr′tū-gal), refuses to aid Columbus, 3; tries to prevent his voyage, 7; refuses to aid Magellan, 17.
Postrider, a, picture, 130; days of, in the far West, 233.
Powder house near Boston, picture, 141.
Powhatan (pow-hă-tăn′), releases John Smith, 46; sends representatives to England with Pocahontas, 49.
President of the United States, how chosen, 170; power of, 171; succession in case of his death, settled, 236.
Princeton (prĭns′tŏn), location, 151 *map;* battle of, 154.
Printing, in the colonies, 104, 130–132, 136.
Printz (prĭnts), Governor, of New Sweden, 94, 95.
Providence (prŏv′ĭ-dĕns), location, 62 *map;* founded, 75.
Pure food laws, 247.
Puritans (pūr′ĭ-tănz), who they were, 52; decide to found a colony in America, 61; have trouble with the king in England, 62; found Boston, 62, 63; their virtues and faults, 64; drive out Roger Williams, 65; and the Quakers, 67, 68.
Putnam (pŭt′năm), Israel (ĭz′rā-ĕl), hurries to Boston, 142; at Bunker Hill, 145.

Quaker (kwā′kêr) dress, picture, 67; portrait of a, 100.
Quakers, trouble with, in Massachusetts, 67; expelled, 68; buy New Jersey, 98; their advanced ideas, 100; Penn gets Pennsylvania for, 101; pay the Indians for their land, 103; views on education contrasted with those of the Puritans, 104.
Quebec (kwē-bĕk′), Champlain's picture of, 114; named by him, 115; location, 119 *map;* fortress of, picture, 126; attacked by Wolfe, 126; captured by the English, 127; Arnold's expedition to, 147.
Quincy (kwĭn′zĭ), Josiah, defends the soldiers concerned in the Boston Massacre, 137.

Railroads, introduction of, 191.
Raleigh (rą′lĭ), Sir Walter, and Queen Elizabeth, 26; birthplace of, 26; colonies of, 29, 30; imprisoned by James I, 31; gives up his claim on Virginia, 42.
Randolph, Peyton, president of the first Continental Congress, 140.
Region about Fort Duquesne, map, 124.
Region of Burgoyne's invasion, map, 158.
Reina Mercedes (*Spanish*, rā-ē′nä mār-thā′dās), wreck of the, picture, 244.
Revere, Paul, his ride, 141.
Revolutionary dance, picture, 160.
Revolutionary War, causes, 133–140; first two years, 141–153; latter part of the war, 154–168.
Rhode Island, beginnings of, at Providence, 75; on Rhode Island, 76; obtains a charter, 76, 77.
Rice, picture of, 111; staple product of South Carolina, 111.
Richmond (rĭch′mond), chosen capital of the Confederacy, 210; McClellan's advance on, 216; location, 216 *map;* Grant's advance on, 222, 223; Confederate capitol in, picture, 223; captured by Grant, 226.
Rio Grande (*Spanish*, rē′ō grän′dā), quarrel over boundary along, 201; campaigns on, 202; location, 202 *map*.
Roanoke (rō-ą-nōk′) Island, first colony on, 29; second, 29, 30; colony disappears, 30; location, 43 *map*, 109 *map;* search for colony required by the London Company, 47.
Rolfe, John, marries Pocahontas, 48.
Roosevelt (rō′zė-vĕlt), Theodore, character of, 243; leads the Rough Riders, 243; becomes president, 245.
Rough Riders, the, 243; picture of one, 243.

Saint Augustine (ą′gŭs-tēn), Fla., founded, 25; location, 109 *map*.

Saint Lawrence (lą′rēns) River, explored by Cartier, 21; valley of, claimed by France, 24.
Saint Mary's, Md., location, 102 *map;* first settlement in Maryland, 106.
Salem, Mass., founded, 61; location, 62 *map;* first meeting-house in, picture, 74.
Samoset, welcomes the English at Plymouth, 57.
San Francisco (frăn-sĭs′kō) in 1849, picture, 203.
San Salvador (sän säl-vä-dōr′), where Columbus landed, 9.
Santa Maria (*Spanish*, sän′tä mä-rē′ä), one of Columbus's ships, 7; picture of, 8.
Santiago de Cuba (*Spanish*, sän-tē-ä′gō dā kōō′bä), Spanish fleet at, 242; American troops sent there, 243; location, 243 *map;* battle of, 244.
Saratoga (săr-ą-tō′gą), location, 158 *map;* Burgoyne's surrender at, 159.
Sassafras (săs′są-frăs), 33; picture, 32.
Savannah (są-văn′ą), location, 109 *map*, 165 *map*, 211 *map;* founded, 112; in 1741, picture, 112; taken by Sherman, 224.
Scalplock, the, 39.
Scene of Civil War near Washington and Richmond, *map*, 216.
Schenectady (skē-nĕk′tą-dī), location, 119 *map;* attacked by French and Indians, 119, 120.
Scott, General Winfield, his success in Mexico, 202; commands at the beginning of the Civil War, 210.
Sea of Darkness, old idea of, 1; sixteenth century picture of, 1.
Seat of Revolutionary War in the South, *map*, 165.
Secession of Southern States, 206.
Seminole (sĕm′ĭ-nōl) War, 183, 184.
Separatists, who they were, 52.
Serapis (sē-rā′pĭs), battle with the Bon Homme Richard, 163; picture of, 164.
Shenandoah (shĕn-ăn-dō′ą) Valley, General Early in, 223; General Sheridan's devastation of, 223.
Sheridan (shĕr′ĭ-dăn), Philip, devastates the Shenandoah Valley, 223; his ride, 223.
Sherman (shĕr′măn), General, at Vicksburg, 220; his march to the sea, 224; marches northward through the Carolinas, 226.
Sherman's route to the sea, *map*, 223.
Silkworm, picture of, 25.
Sitka (sĭt′ką), Alaska, picture, 231.
Slavery, introduced into America, 51; in the colonies, 129; effect of the cotton-gin on, 173; questions on, begin to arise, 186; the Missouri Compromise, 187; increasing antagonism to, 195, 196; considered in the admission of Texas, 199; the compromise of 1850, 204; the Dred Scott Decision, 205.
Slaves at work, picking cotton, picture, 173; declared contraband of war, 217.
Smith, Captain John, picture of, 44; early career, 45; saved by Pocahontas, 46; activity as governor of Virginia, 46, 47; returns to England, 48; sails for Gorges and is captured by the French, 71, 72.
South Carolina (kăr-ō-lī′ną), first settled at Charleston, 109, 110; Huguenot emigration to, 110; laws of, 110; industries of, 111; separated from North Carolina, 111.
Spain, Columbus received in, 4; his reception in, after his voyage, 10, 11; sends out Magellan, 17; derives wealth from Mexico and South America, 20; her claims in North America, 24; her armada defeated, 30; war of the United States with, 242–244.
Spanish gentleman of the armada period, picture, 31.
Spanish helmet, picture, 16.
Spanish treasure seeker, picture, 25.
Spanish treasure ships, picture, 29.
"Spoils system," introduced by Jackson, 192.
Squanto (skwăn′tō), aids the Pilgrims, 57; kidnapping of, 70, 71.
"Squatter sovereignty," 205.
Squaw, picture of, 35; her duties, 35.
Stage, early American, picture, 132.

Stage-coach, picture of, 188.
Stamp Act, what it was, 134; passed, 135; opposition of the colonies, 136; repealed, 136; stamp to be used under the, picture, 134.
Stamp tax levied by the United States, 134, 248.
Standish, Miles, in the Pilgrims' exploring party, 55; his sword, picture, 57; leads the Pilgrim forces, 59; his army, picture, 60.
"Star-Spangled Banner, The," written, 181.
Stark, Colonel John, beats Burgoyne's men at Bennington, 158.
"Starving time" in Virginia, 48.
Stephenson (stē'vėn-sŏn), George, inventor of the steam locomotive, 191.
Steuben (stū'bĕn or, *German*, stoi'bėn), Baron von, drills the American army, 161; portrait of, 161.
Stone axe, picture of, 35.
Stowe (stō), Mrs., 204.
Strand, the, now Whitehall Street, New York, in 1673, picture, 95.
Stuyvesant (stī'vė-sănt), Governor, last of the Dutch governors of New Amsterdam, 92; conquers New Sweden, 94, 95; resolved to oppose the English, 95, 96; tears up Nicolls's letter, picture, 96; forced to yield, 97; his "Bowery House," picture, 98.
Sugar-cane, picture, 236.
Sumter (sŭm'tėr), Thomas, his guerrilla warfare in South Carolina, 165.
Supreme Court, how made up, 171.
Swedes, settle in Delaware, 94; conquered by the Dutch, 94, 95.

Tariff, protective, 238; reciprocity in, 238; reduction of, 248.
Taylor, General Zachary, his success in the Mexican War, 202; president, 203.
Tea, tax imposed on, in the colonies, 137; sent to America, 138; the Boston Tea-party, 138.
Telegraph, invented, 199; picture of a sounder, 199.
Texas (tĕks'ăs), frees herself from Mexico, 198; seal of, picture, 198; admitted to the Union, 199.
Thomas, General, the Rock of Chickamauga, 221.
Ticonderoga (tī-kŏn-dė-rō'gâ), Fort, captured by Ethan Allen, 143; recaptured by Burgoyne, 158; location, 158 *map*.
Tinder box, picture, 86.
Tippecanoe (tĭp-ė-kâ-nōō'), 197.
Tobacco, picture of, 28; culture of, begun in Virginia by John Rolfe, 48; culture of, in Maryland, 107.
Toronto (tō-rŏn'tō), burning of, 180.
Town meeting, begun at Plymouth, 59; held in Boston, 66.
Transportation in 1825, 189.
Traveling, in America before the Revolution, 132; in 1825, 189.
Treasury Building, Washington, picture of, 234.
Trent affair, the, 212.
Trenton (trĕn'ton), N.J., location, 151 *map;* battle of, 152.
Turks, cut off trade with the East, 3; John Smith and the, 45.
Tyler (tī'lėr), John, made vice-president, 197; becomes president, 198.

Underground Railroad, 204.
Union Pacific Railroad finished, 232.
Union soldier, picture, 210.
Union soldiers sharing their rations with Confederates after Lee's surrender, picture, 227.
United States, declared free, 149; financial troubles after the Revolution, 169; Hamilton's suggestions for the payment of debts of, 171; trouble with France, 173; suppresses Barbary pirates, 174; buys Louisiana, 275; War of 1812, 176–181; westward growth, 183–196; troubles over slavery, 197–207; the Civil War, 208–228; recent events in, 229–250.
United States and its possessions, the, *map*, 252.

Valley Forge, location, 151 *map;* winter at, 160.

Van Buren (văn bū′rĕn), Martin, events during his presidency, 194–196.
Vera Cruz (vĕ′rä krōōz), 202; location, 202 *map;* held by United States, 249.
Vespucius (vĕs-pū′shŭs), Americus (a-mĕr′ĭ-kŭs), sails along South America, 15.
Vicksburg (vĭks′bûrg), location, 211 *map;* capture of, 220.
Vincennes (vĭn-sĕnz′), captured by the Americans, 162.
Virginia, derivation of name, 28; granted to Raleigh, 28, 29; taken over by the London and Plymouth companies, 42; colonists sent to, 43; "starving time" in, 48; culture of tobacco begun, 48; women sent to, 49; House of Burgesses, 50; slavery introduced, 51; Bacon's rebellion, 51; patriotic uprising, 135, 139.
Virginia Indian, picture of, 46.

Wall Street, why so named, 92.
Wampum (wąm′pŭm), 39; picture of, 40.
War dance, picture of an Indian warrior's, 41.
War of 1812, causes of, 176; events of, 177–181; close of, 181.
Warship's gun-deck, picture, 176.
Washington (wŏsh′ĭng-tŏn), George, sent to Fort Duquesne with a message, 123; his experience with Braddock, 124; made commander-in-chief of the Continental Army, 143, 144; takes command of the army in Cambridge, 145; his cares, 146; urged to attack Boston, 147; drives the British from Boston, 148; refuses to receive a letter not addressed to the commander-in-chief, 150; driven from New York, 151; crossing the Delaware, picture, 152; beats the Hessians at Trenton, 152; eludes Cornwallis at Princeton, 154; winters at Morristown, 154; portrait of, 155; accepts no salary, 156; the "American Fabius," 157; conspiracy against, 160; at the surrender of Cornwallis, 167; resigning commission, picture, 169; elected president, 171; inauguration of, picture, 171; dies, 174.
Washington, city of, burned by the British, 180; location, 216 *map.*
Watling's (wŏt′lĭngz) Island, Columbus's supposed landing-place, 9, 10; location, 9 *map.*
Weapons the Indians used, 38.
Webster, Daniel, opposes nullification, 193; making his famous speech, picture, 193; votes for the compromise of 1850, 204.
West Indies, map, 243.
Wethersfield (wĕth′ẽrz-fēld), Conn., founded, 79; location, 80 *map.*
White, Peregrine, 56.
Whitehall Street, New York, in 1673, picture, 95.
White House, picture, 229.
Whitney, Eli, invents the cotton-gin, 172, 173.
"Wigwam Church," 106.
Wilderness, battle of, 222.
Willamette River, 201.
Williams, Roger, driven out of Massachusetts, 65; flees from Salem, 74; founds Providence, 75; statue of, picture, 76; character of, 77; prevents Canonicus from joining the Pequots, 80.
Wilson, Woodrow, presidency of, 247–250.
Windsor (wĭn′zẽr), Conn., founded, 79; location, 80 *map.*
Winthrop (wĭn′thrŏp), John, comes to New England, 62, 63; arrival of his colony in Boston, picture, 63; his character, 64; cup given by, to the first church, picture, 64; warns Roger Williams, 65, 74; goes to New York with Richard Nicolls, 96.
Witchcraft delusion in Massachusetts, 69.
Wolfe (wŏŏlf), General, commands English forces at Quebec, 126; killed, 127.
Wolpi, pueblo of, picture, 34.
Wool spinning wheel, picture, 87.
Writs of Assistance, 134.

Yale College, founded, 82; house where it was founded, picture, 82.
York, Duke of, obtains New York, 97; gives New Jersey to Berkeley and Carteret, 97.
Yorktown, Va., location, 165 *map;* capture of Cornwallis at, 167.

HECKMAN BINDERY
BOUND TO
NOV 13 1941
PLEASE
N. MANCHESTER, IND.